KAMIESBERG MUNICIPALITY

"gems galore from mountains to shore"

REAL GEMS
REAL EXPERIENCES

2024 / 2025



TABLE OF CONTENTS

	CHAPTER 1. INTRODUCTION AND BACKGROUND	Pg No
1.1	Introduction	7
1.1.1	Demography	7
1.1.2	Mayoral IDP Forward 2023/2024	9
1.1.3	Municipal Manager IDP Forward 2024 / 2025	10
1.1.4	Contact Details	11
1.2	Background	12-28
1.3	Sencus 2022	29-39
1.3.1	Constitutional Context	39
1.3.2	Municipal Systems Act, Act No 32 of 2000 (MSA)	39-40
1.3.3	Spatial Planning Land Use Management Act, Act 16 of 2013 (SPLUMA)	40-41
1.4	Purpose of the Guidelines	41
	CHAPTER 2. DEVELOPMENT OF LEGALY COMPLIANT IDPS	42
2.1	Process and Content Framework	42
2.1.1	Development of the District Development Framework	42
2.1.2	Process Plan	43
2.2	Drafting of an IDP	43-45
2.3	Provincial Assessment and MEC Comments	46
2.4	Annual IDP Review and Amendment Process	46
2.4.1	Review	46
2.4.2	Amendments	46
	CHAPTER 3. ADOPTION OF AN IDP DURING AN ELECTION YEAR	47
3.1	Legal Requirements	47
	CHAPTER 4. TRANSVERAL PLANNING	48
4.1	Legal Requirements	48
4.1.1	Municipal Systems Act, Act 32 of 2000	48
4.1.2	Human Settlements: The Housing Act, Act 107 of 1997	48
4.1.3	National Land Transport Act, Act 5 of 2009	49
4.1.4	Water Service Act, Act 108 of 1997	49
4.1.5	Climate Change Bill, 2018	49
4.1.6	Local Economic Development and Inclusive Economic Development (Integrated Urban Development Framework)	49
4.2	Guidance	50
4.3	Key Role-players within the municipality	51
4.3.1	The Mayor	51
4.3.2	The Mayor, Municipal Manager and Chief Financial Officer	52
4.3.3	The Municipal Manager	52

4.4	Governance Structure	52-54
4.5	Administration Governance	55-57
	CHAPTER 5. ROLES AND RESPONSIBILITIES	58
5.1	National and Provincial Sector Participation	58
5.1.1	Why is Sector Participation in Municipal Integrated Development Planning Important?	58
5.1.2	Recognition of different roles and responsibilities of sector departments	58
5.1.3	Sector participation guiding principles	59
5.1.4	Sector participation in the development of the 5-year IDP	60
5.1.5	Sector participation in the annual review of IDPs	60
5.1.6	Intergovernmental platforms and structure's	60
5.1.7	Provincial monitoring of IDPs	61
5.2	Traditional Authorities	61
5.3	Mining Companies	61
5.3.1	SLP Development Process	62
	CHAPTER 6. RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN THE IDP AND ONE PLAN	63
6.1	What is the One Plan	63
6.2	Relationship between the IDP and One Plan	64
	CHAPTER 7. DEVELOPMENT STRATEGIES	65
7.1	Overview	65
7.2	Vision	65
7.3	Mission	65
7.4	Value Statement	65
7.5	KPA 1: Service Delivery	66
7.5.1	Strategic Objective	66
7.5.2	Intended Outcome	66
7.5.3	Water	66
7.5.3.1	Status of the Water Service Development Plan	66
7.5.3.2	National Target	67
7.5.4	Water and Sanitation Reliable Service Delivery Implementation Plan	67
7.5.4.1	Water Service Levels	67
7.5.4.2	Definition of Reliable Service	67
7.5.4.3	Reliable Water Supply is Subject to many Factors including the Following	67
7.5.4.4	Key Challenges are:	68
7.5.4.5	The Urban Rural Split	68
7.5.4.6	Infrastructure	69
7.5.4.7	Water Infrastructure Schemes	69-70
7.5.4.8	Water Security	71
7.5.4.9	Asset Management	71

7.6.3	Water Resource Needs	71
7.6.3.1	Blue Drop Compliance	71
7.6.3.2	Green Drop Compliance	72
7.6.4	Water Conservation and Demand Management	73
7.6.5	Sanitation Service Status	74
7.6.6	Governance	75
7.6.7	O & M of Water and Sewerage Infrastructure	76
7.6.7.1	Refurbishment of Water & Sewerage Infrastructure	77-79
7.6.8	Projects Need Identification	79-80
7.6.8.1	Blue Drop Compliancy	81
7.6.8.2	Green Drop Compliancy	81
7.7	Electricity and Energy	82
7.7.1	Provision of Energy	82
7.7.2	Solar Power Potential	82
7.7.3	Wind Power Potential	82
7.8	Integrated Waste management Plan	83
7.8.1	Defining the Geographical Area	83
7.8.2	Waste Stream Analysis	84
7.8.3	Status Quo of Waste Treatment Facilities	84
7.8.4	Status Quo of Waste Recyclers	84
7.8.5	Status Quo of Other Types of Facilities	84
7.9	KPA 2. Local Economic Development	85
7.9.1	Strategic Objective	85
7.9.2	Intended Outcome	85
7.10	KPA 3. Financial Viability	85
7.10.1	Strategic Objective	85
7.10.2	Intended Outcome	85
7.11	KPA 4. Municipal Transformation	86
7.11.1	Skills Development	86
7.11.2	Human Resource Management Plan / Strategy	87-91
7.11.3	Individual Performance and Organizational Management System	91
7.12	KPA 5. Good Governance	91
7.12.1	Strategic Objective	
7.12.2	Intended Outcome	
7.13	Audit Committee	92
7.14	MPAC Committee	93
7.15	Municipal Ward Committee	93
7.16	Health Care Services	94-95
8.1	CHAPTER 8. STRATEGIC INTENT DEVELOPMENT AND PROJECTS	96
8.1.1	SWOT Analysis	96-98
8.1.2	Strategic Objectives	98
8.1.3	Intended Outcome	99
8.2	Infrastructure Development	99-101

8.5	Public Launched Site	102-104
8.6	Tourism Development	105
8.7	Current and Planned Projects	105
8.8	Community Needs: 2022 / 2023 and 2023 / 2024 and2024 / 2025	106-113
8.9	Unfunded Projects: Department Economic Development and Tourism	113
8.10	Projects: Department of Education	113
8.11	Housing Projects from COGHSTA	113
8.11	Kamiesberg Municipality: Capital Budget 2022/2023 and 2023 / 2024 and 5024 / 2025 Implementation Plan	114
8.12	Kamiesberg Municipality: Capital Projects Registered	115
8.13	Division of Revenue Act: 2023 / 2026 allocations	116
8.14	EPIP Projects	116
8.15	Social and Labour Plans: Projects	117
8.16	Projects of Previous Years	118-128
8.17	Medicinal Plants of Kamiesberg Municipality	129-130
8.18	TRANCRAA Land	131
8.18.1	Leliefontein	131
8.18.2	Lepelfontein	131
8.18.3	Land Reform	132
8.19	Leliefontein Massacre Project	133
8.20	Green Climate Fund Projects	133-135
8.21	Gender base Violence	135-156
	CHAPTER 9. FINANCIAL POLICIES	156
9.1	Legislative Overview	156
9.2	Roles and Responsibilities of Council and Administration	156
9.3	Budget Planning Process	157
9.4	Role of Council in Budget Process	158
9.5	Financial Plan	158
9.5.1	Brief Summary of the Financial Plan	158
9.5.2	Key Budget Expenditure Items	159
9.5.3	Capital Expenditure	159
9.5.4	Financial Management Grant	159
9.5.5	Services Tariffs	159
9.5.6	Free Basic Services	159
9.5.7	Consolidated Overview of the 2024/2025 MTREF	160
9.6	Role of Council in Budget	160
9.7	Legislative Mandate	160
9.8	GRAP Compliance	160
9.9	MSCOA Compliance	160

9.10	Accountability and Good Governance	160
9.11	Asset Management Plan	161
9.12	Budget Policies	161-162
9.13	Overview of Alignment of Annual Budget with IDP	162-171
	CHAPTER 10. PERFORMANCE MANAGEMENT	172
10.1	Purpose	172
10.2	The Constitution of South Africa, (Act 108 of 1996)	172
10.3	Municipal Systems Act, 2000 (Act 32 of 2000)	172
10.4	Municipal Planning and Performance Regulations	173
10.5	Regulations for Municipal Managers and Managers reporting to MM	173
10.6	Municipal Finance Management Act. No 56 of 2003	174
10.7	Batho Pele Principles	175
10.8	Objectives of the Performance Management Framework	176
10.9	Delegation of Responsibilities	176
10.10	Relationship between the IDP and PMS	178
10.11	Performance Monitoring	179
	CHAPTER 11. CLIMATE CHANGE	179
11.1	Impact of Climate Change	179
11.2	Impact of Climate Change on Agriculture	181
11.3	Impact of Climate Change on Biodiversity and Environment	181
11.4	Manage the Loss of High Priority Biomes	181
11.5	Coastal and Marine Environment	182
11.6	Manage Impact on Marine and Bethink Ecosystems	182
11.7	Manage Loss of Land due to Sea Level Rise	182
11.8	Manage Increase Damage to Property from Sea Level Rise	183
11.9	NERSA Vaalputs	183
11.10	Allien Invasive Species	184
11.11	Air Quality	184
	CHAPTER 12. MARINE SECTOR PLANS	185
12.1	Marine Aquaculture Sector Plans	186
12.2	Marine Offshore Oil and Gas Sector Plans	190
12.3	Marine Underwater Infrastructure Sector Plans	195
12.4	Phakisa Economy	198
12.5	Marine Biodiversity Sector Plan	199
12.6	Marine Science and Innovation Sector Plan	201
12.7	Martine and Underwater Cultural Heritage Sector Plan	202
12.8	Coastal and Marine Tourism Sector Plan	204
12.9	Marine Defense (Navy) Sector Plan	205
12.10	Marine Transport and Ports Sector Plan	206

12.11	Wild Fisheries Sector Plan	208
	CHAPTER 13. STATE of the PROVINCE ADRESS	
	The Budget Speech	
	State of the Nation Adress	
	ATTACHEMENTS: Approved Organizational Structure 2024 / 2025	
	- Audit action Plan	
	- Work Place Skills Plan and Annual Training Report	

CHAPTER 1. INTRODUCTION and BACKGROUND

1.1 INTRODUCTION

1.1.1DEMOGRAPHY

Area: 14 210km². The Kamiesberg Local Municipality is a Category B municipality situated within the Namakwa District in the Northern Cape Province. It is one of the smaller municipalities of the six that make up the district. Kamiesberg Local Municipality provides services to 16 small towns – Kamassies, Rooifontein, Nourivier, Leliefontein, Paulshoek, Kamieskroon, Kharkams, Tweervier, Koiingnaas, Kheis, Soebatsfontein, Spoegrivier, Klipfontein, Garies, Hondeklipbaai and Lepelfontein. The nearest business centre is Springbok 120km away.

The municipality spans three topographic zones: from the sandy coastal lowlands (Sandveld) to the mountainous central Kamiesberg escarpment (Hardveld), and to the eastern plateau of Bushmanland.

There are no perennial rivers in the area. Water is obtained from subterranean sources.

Some of the water is pumped up by windmills, but most of the water to the communal areas comes from natural springs. Many of these springs are semi-perennial and the salt content of the water can vary from year to year, causing problems.

Four main types of vegetation are found in the area: Mountain Renosterveld, Succulent Karoo, False Succulent Karoo and Namaqualand Broken Veld. However, overall plant life is in a deteriorating state and non-edible, undesirable and poisonous vegetation is taking over.



1.1.2 MAYORAL IDP FORWARD 2024 / 2025

Foreword of Mayor IDP (2024/2025)

The Integrated Development Plan (IDP) is a plan which local government is required to compile to determine the development needs of the municipality.

I am satisfied that this IDP will address the need of the communities and that quality service delivery will be improved drastically through it. Poverty and unemployment in communities is that it is an influence on the Municipality's financial position. Cash flow problems lead to deterioration in service delivery, increase in creditors and debtors take monthly raise.

The need for sustainable service delivery and economic development is strongly rooted in communities enquires about job creation and to earn an income.

Finally, allow me the recognition appreciative to all the dedicated officials and Councillors for their endless connection to doe acquisition of a practical IDP.

Let us join hands for the best future.

Cllr Susarah C Nero
Mayor
Kamiesberg Municipality

1.1.3 MUNICIPAL MANAGER IDP FORWARD 2024 / 2025

Foreword of Municipal Manager IDP (2024/2025)

The Integrated Development Plan (IDP) is an approach to planning which is aimed at involving the municipality and the community to find the best solutions towards sustainable development.

The municipality is under financial pressure and constrains to meet the ever-increasing development needs of the community. Over the years, the financial pressure has seen the decrease in municipal revenue source that limits the capacity to delivery on the on the expansion of services. Where appropriate, provision is also made for improving this access and removing remaining backlogs, however small they might be.

The municipality is facing many crucial risks, such as water shortages, resulting pressure on service and infrastructure provision as well as a resulting proportional decrease in the rates base.

Many thanks to all who participated and contributed tot the development of this IDP document.

Thank you

Mr Rufus C Beukes
Municipal Manager
Kamiesberg Municipality

1.1.4 CONTACT DETAILS OF THE MUNICIPALITY

POSTAL ADRESS:

PRIVATE BAG X 200

GARIES

8200

PHYSICAL ADRESS:

22 MAIN STREET

GARIES

8200

TEL: 027 6528000

FAX: 027 6528001

WEB: www.kamiesbergmun.co.za

MUNICIPAL MANAGER

MR RUFUS BEUKES

TEL: 027 6528000 / FAX: 027 6528001 / CELL: 078 198 4237

E – MAIL: rufusb@kamiesberg.gov.za or mm@kamiesberg.gov.za

MAYOR

COUNCILLOR: SUSARAH NERO

TEL: 027 6528000 / CELL: 063 514 8101

E – MAIL: Susarah.nero@gmail.com

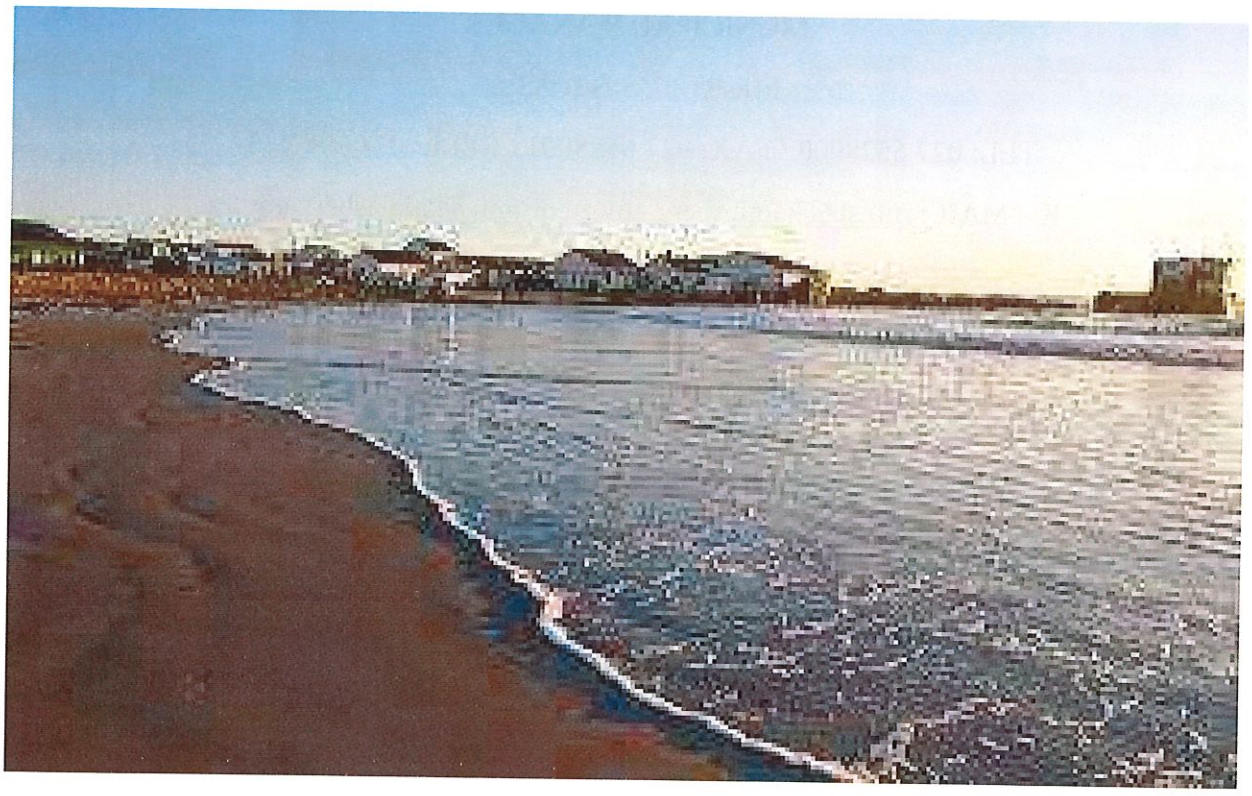
1.2 Background

The Municipality is structured into the following six (6) wards, namely:

WARD	TOWN
1	Hondeklipbaai, Koingnaas, Soebatsfontein and Spoegrivier
2	Garies
3	Lepelfontein, Kheis and Klipfontein
4	Kamassies, Rooifontein, Nourivier and Paulshoek
5	Kharkams and Tweerivier
6	Kamieskroon and Leliefontein

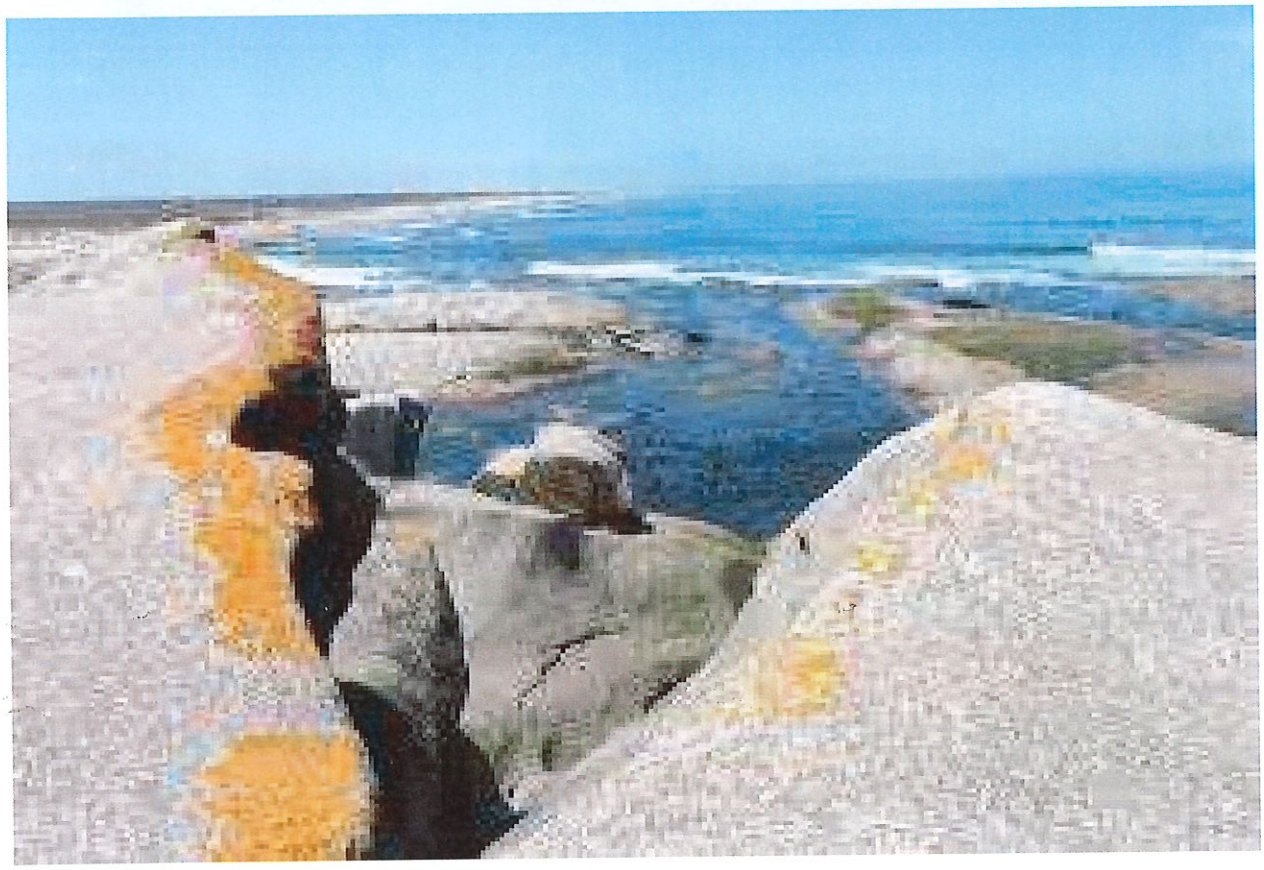
HONDEKLIPBAAI

Hondeklip Bay or Hondeklipbaai as it is known in Afrikaans is a small, picturesque village on the West Coast of Namaqualand and lies about 95 km South West of Springbok. Nestled between the Namaqua National Park and the South Atlantic Ocean, Hondeklip Bay can be reached by different routes, the Messelpad, The Wildeperdehoekpas, through Soebatsfontein, or Kamieskroon, or from Garies. Hondeklip Bay was formerly a favoured holiday destination for fishermen, divers and farmers. Nowadays, holiday makers from all over the country enjoy their holidays here. During the flower season, Hondeklip Bay is spectacular to behold with all the orange and yellow flowers blooming towards the sun.



KOINGNAAS

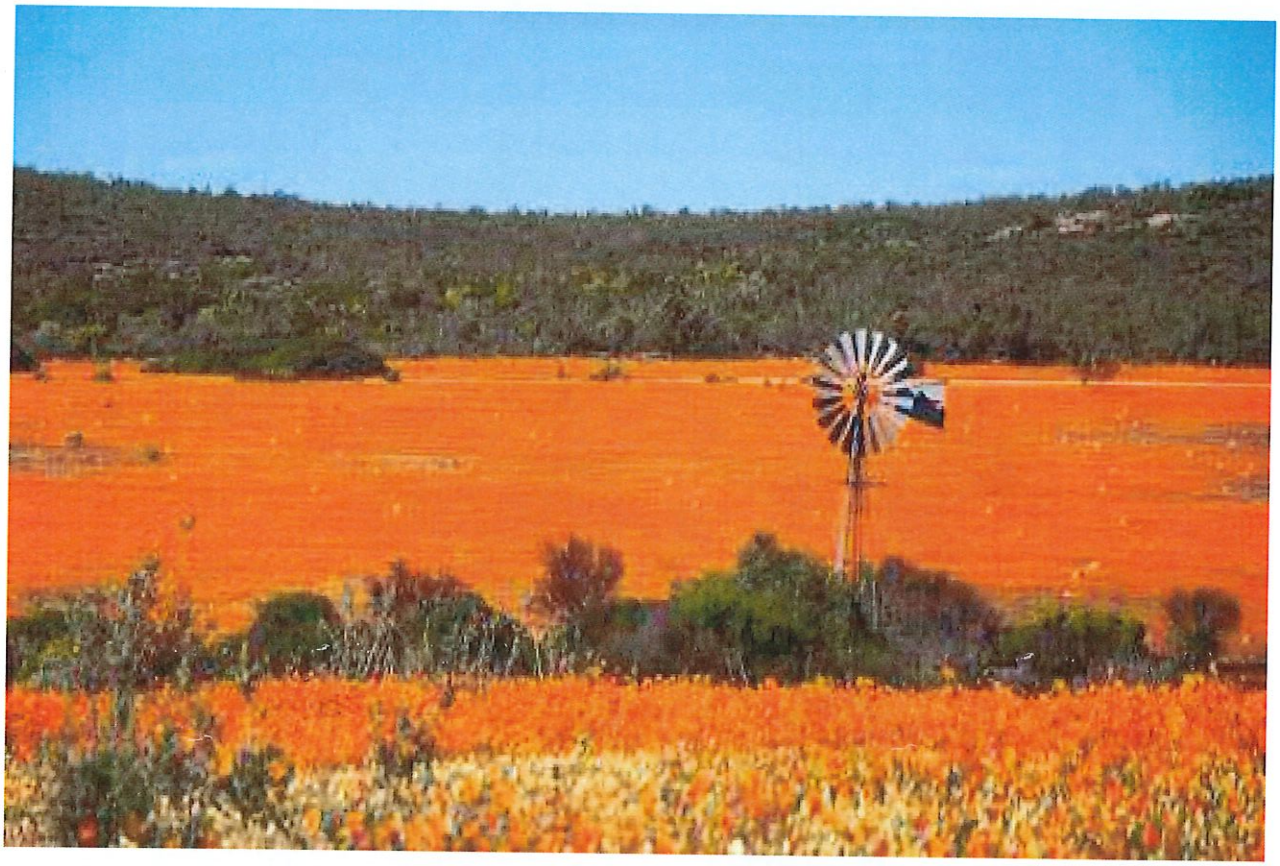
Koiingnaas is a small town some 110km from Garies. Since 2015/16 Koiingnaas form part of the Kamiesberg Local Municipality. The Town was first part of the Namakwa Districts Municipality. Established in 1970, Koiingnaas was once a flourishing diamond –mining town, but after De Beers departed the population has fallen rapidly from its peak of about 1000 inhabitants to approximately 105, according to the Census taken in 2011.Koiingnaas is in a restricted area and visitors need to fill in a register and present an ID at the gate office. A gravel road leads to this small mining town. There are also two general grocery stores and library services at the Municipal building. The clinic is currently not in use. The community make use of the health services at the Hondeklipbaai clinic. There are no schools, the community either make use of Home based education or the schools in Hondeklipbaai or Kleinzee



SOEBATSFONTEIN

Soebatsfontein is a settlement nearly in Namakwa District Municipality but part of the Kamiesberg Local Municipality in the Northern Cape.

This settlement is 80 km south-west of Springbok and 48 km north-west of Kamieskroon. The name, Afrikaans for 'begging or pleading fountain', dates from an incident about 1898 in which Hendrik S(t)ievert, a farmhand, was murdered by San in spite of his begging for mercy.[2]



SPOEGRIVIER

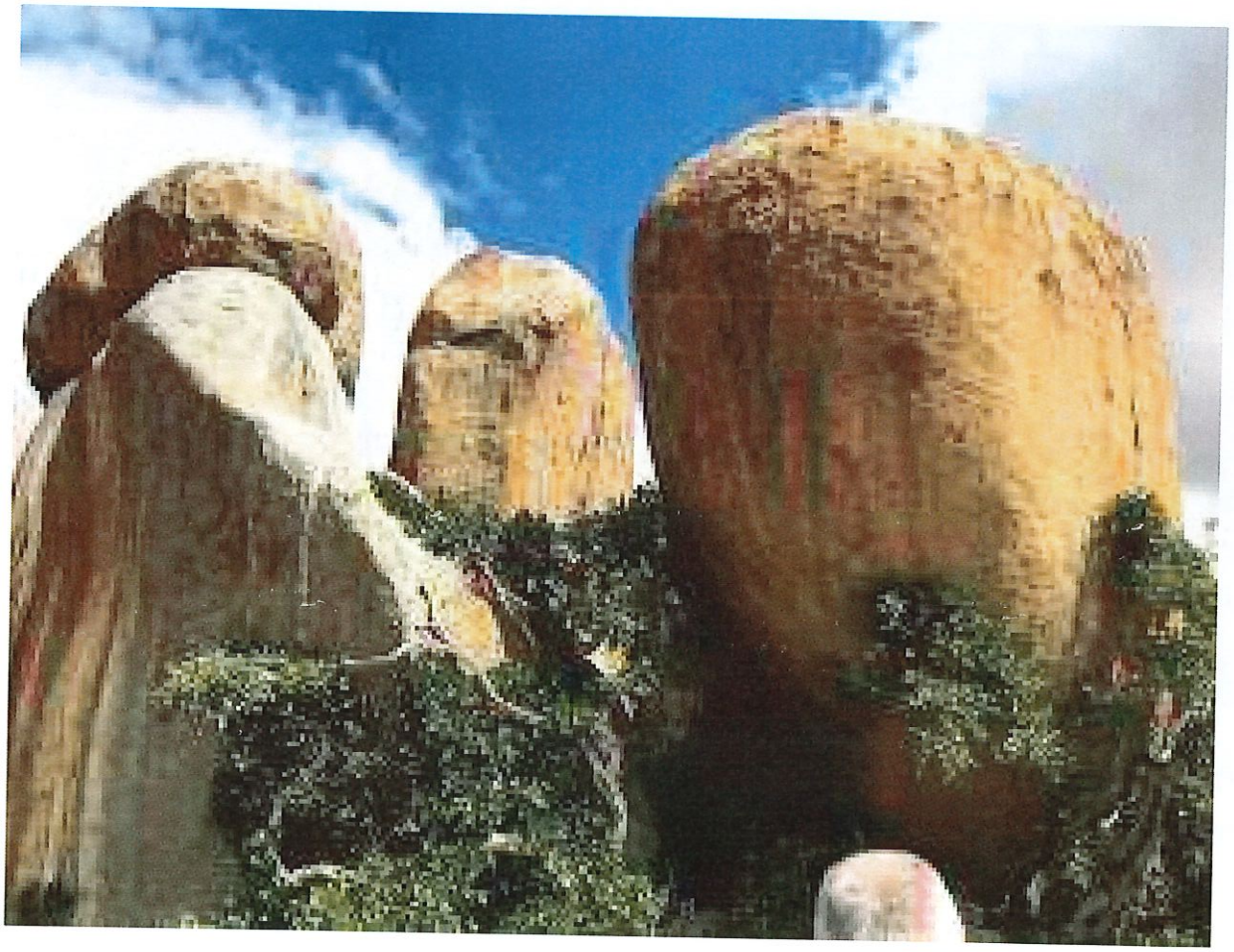
Spoegrivier is a town in Kamiesberg Municipality some 13 km west-north-west of Karkams and 46 km east of Hondeklipbaai. It takes its name from the non-perennial stream which rises north of it and extends south and then west to enter the Atlantic Ocean 20 km south-east of Hondeklipbaai. Afrikaans for 'spit river', the name is probably translated from Khoekhoen Kanoep, referring to a disease affecting cattle.

The Spoegrivier Caves are part of the proposed Groen-Spoeg Coastal Park ,46 km East of Hondeklipbaai. These caves are of archaeological importance as they contain the earliest evidence of sheep in South Africa. The bones found date back about 2 000 years. The National Monuments Act protects this site therefore no camping, fires, digging or vehicles are permitted in the caves



GARIES

Garies is small agricultural center situated in the Northern Cape Province about 120km south of Springbok.Garies is a Nama (a Khoisan tribe) name, also spelt as th'aries and xaris. It is right on the N7 and thus easily serves as a journey breather or 'not-quite-halfway' mark for those on the road between Cape Town and Namibia. It lies in the heart of the Namaqualand and makes an excellent base for those exploring the spring flowers. The sheer lavishness of blossoms during spring, after good rains, draw visitors to this part of the Namaqualand from around the world. The area has the richest succulent flora in the world, about one third of the world's approximately 10'000 succulent species. Nearly 40% of the species are endemic. The area has 1200different plant species, hundreds of which are only found in Namaqualand and also 150 bird species. The Namaqualand Flower Trail Run, a 20km loop on the Roodebergkloof Trail starts just north of Garies, with a rather tough 12km ascent to the summit of the Rooiberg. Include Letterklip (alphabet stone), something of a stone fortress used during the South African War.



LEPELFONTEIN

Lepelsfontein is a village situated in the southern section of the Kamiesberg with its communal area bordering on the Western Cape and some 30km from the Namaqualand West Coast, and is part of the Kamiesberg Local Municipality, in the Namaqua Districts Municipality. Lepelsfontein is some 61km south of Garies, 28km west of Rietpoort, 52km west of Bitterfontein on the N7, 10km south east of Kotzesrus and some 45km south east of Groenriviersmond via Ruitervlei se mond.

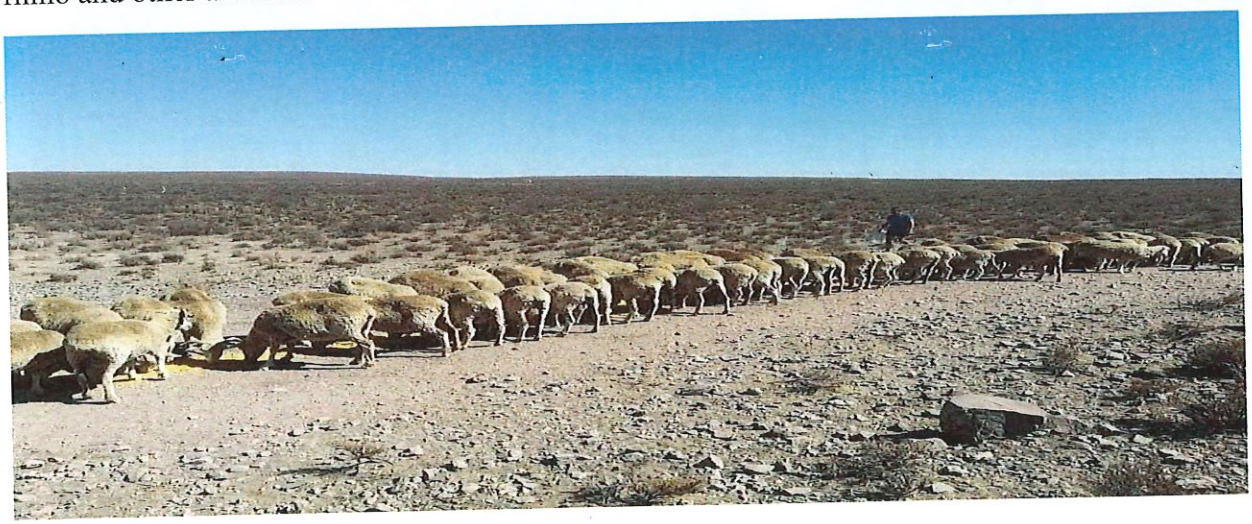
Per the 2011 census, Lepelsfontein had a population of some 233 people who are mainly communal farmers, farming with sheep and goats with some of the population working on the surrounding commercial farms.

Lepelsfontein has a primary school, Roman Catholic church, a small general grocery store, Municipal offices and a clinic within their community centre.

Lepelsfontein was established close to a spring where the village got its name from – when the spring started to dry up the local inhabitants had to use a spoon to get water out of the spring, thus the name Lepelsfontein or Spoon fountain. Some of the local inhabitants decided to move away from Rietpoort and established a village near the spring which gave the village its name.

Lepelsfontein's communal area borders on the Western Cape and is surrounded by a communal area of 28.72km2 where the community farm with sheep and goats. Other than the Western Cape, the communal area is surrounded by commercial farms. The area surrounding Lepelsfontein is littered with old giant termite mounds which are also known as fairy circles.

This area was in the 18th and 19th centuries part of the main route explorers, used to travel through as close to the village is Meerhof's Castle where van der Stel stayed over in 1685 on his way to the rumoured copper fields near the Gariep river. The route followed by the early travelers to the north largely coincided with the old well established game trails of elephant, rhino and other animals.



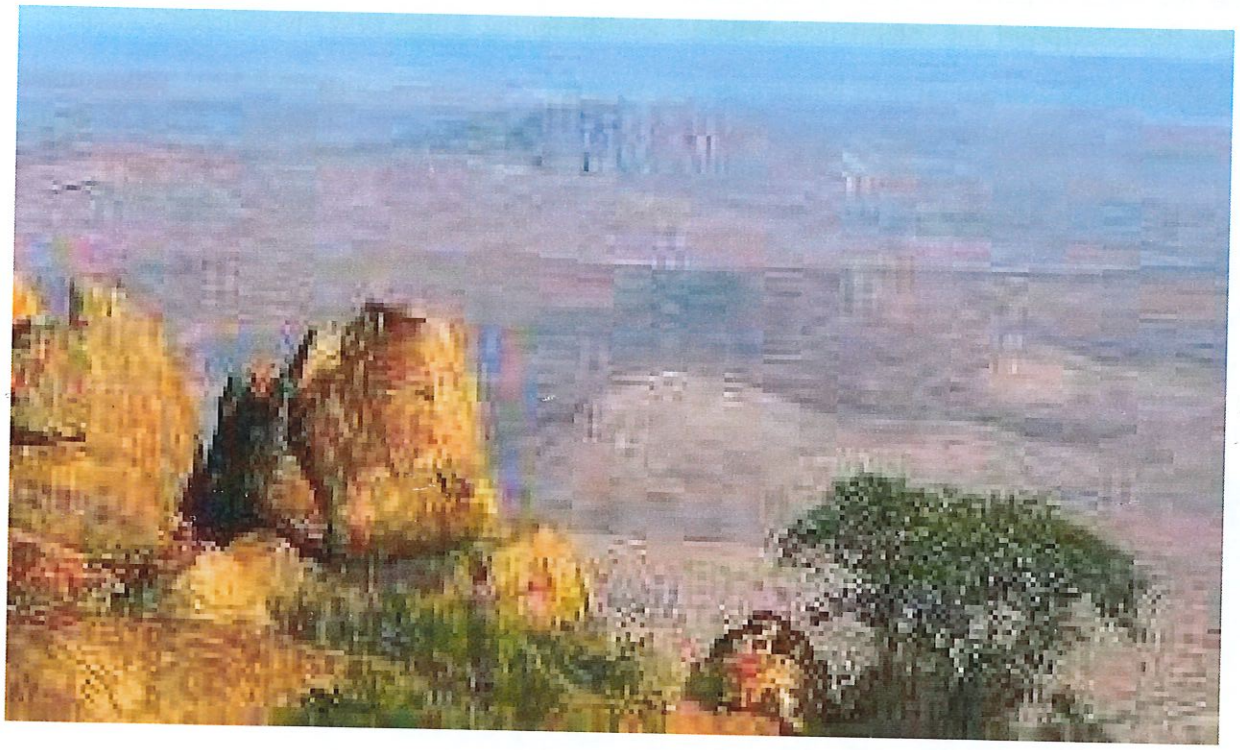
KHEIS

Kheis is one of 10 communal villages to be found in the Leliefontein Communal Area situated in a river valley below the mountainous central Kamiesberg escarpment which is part of the Groenrivier system, which is part of the Kamiesberg Local Municipality in the Namaqua Districts Municipality. Kheis is some 14 km north Garies.

Per the 2011 census, Kheis had a population of some 488 people who primarily are communal farmers, farming with sheep and goats. Population group- Coloured 97% First Language- Afrikaans 98%.

Kheis has a primary school (None selected), a general grocery store, one tuck-shop and a clinic. The community have access to health care twice a week. Kheis has an earthen dam to the north of the village which is used for irrigating cultivated lands below the dam wall. When the dam has water it is known that water birds congregate here.

Kheis is a Khoi name meaning "a place where you live, or a home". The village is named in recognition of the Khoi people who were the first permanent dwellers of Namaqualand. The other translation for Keis, is the Khoi/Khoekhoe word for sand, the word can also be interpreted as Sanddrif or Dryfsand. Keis is pronounced 'chais' in Xhosa.



KLIPFONTEIN

Klipfontein is one of ten communal villages to be found in the Leliefontein Communal Area situated in the most southerly part of the communal area at the bottom of the Kamiesberg highlands on the edge of the Sandveld, is part of the Kamiesberg Local Municipality, in the Namaqua Districts Municipality. Klipfontein is some 25km north west of Garies and 64 km east of Hondeklip Bay.

Per the 2011 census, Klipfontein had a population of some 466 people who primarily are communal farmers, farming with sheep and goats.Klipfontein has a primary school, some small shops, post office- and a clinic services at the Municipal building, Municipal offices and liquor store. Klipfontein is one of the very few communal villages connected with the N7 by a tarr road.

Klipfontein lies to the east of a 501m high mountain, called "Soetheuningberg" or directly translated as "Sweet Honey Mountain"!!! Klipfontein, as many other "fontein" or fountain named places, was named after a fountain which had its source under a "Klip" or Rock.



KAMASSIES

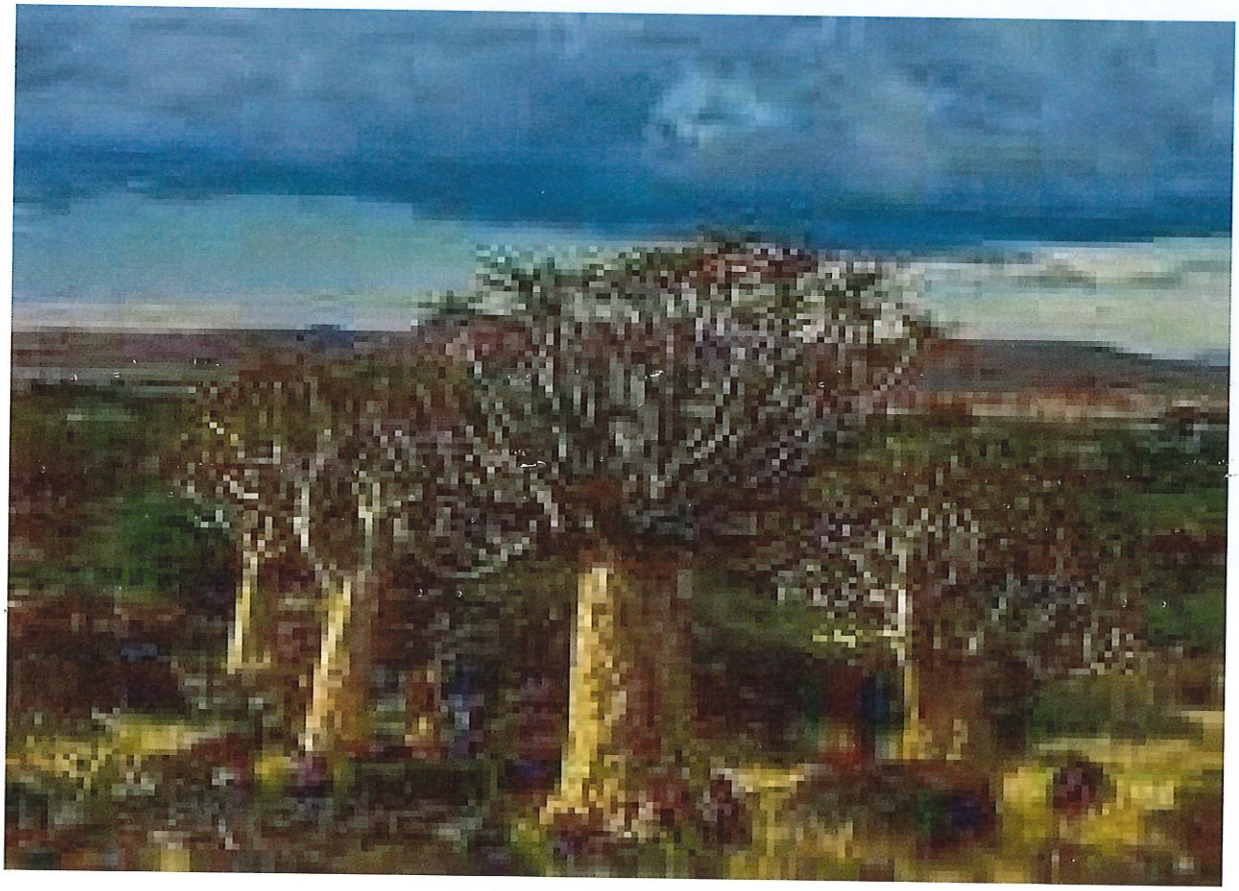
Kamassies is one of ten communal villages to be found in the Leliefontein Communal Area situated on the eastern plateau of the Bushmanland, part of the Kamiesberg Local Municipality in the Namaqua Districts Municipality.

Kamassies is some 68km east north east of Kamieskroon, 89km south east of Springbok via the Gamoep gravel road (R355) and some 106km north east of Garies via Studers Pass, Leliefontein and Nourivier.

Per the 2011 census, Kamassies had a population of some 341 people who primarily are communal farmers, farming with sheep and goats.

Kamassies has a Municipal office, primary school, a small grocery stores and a clinic. The community have access to health care twice a week.

Here small groups of Namaqua descendants established themselves as stock farmers, moving seasonally between the mountains and the plains, thus the formation of villages over a period of time. Kamassies is the most north-easterly village within the Leliefontein Communal area and is split by the Upper Buffels River which joins the Lower Buffels to the east of the northern section of the village.



ROOIFONTEIN

Rooifontein is one of the 10 communal villages to be found in the Leliefontein Communal Area situated on the eastern plateau of the Bushmanland, is part of the Kamiesberg Local Municipality, in the Namaqua Districts Municipality.

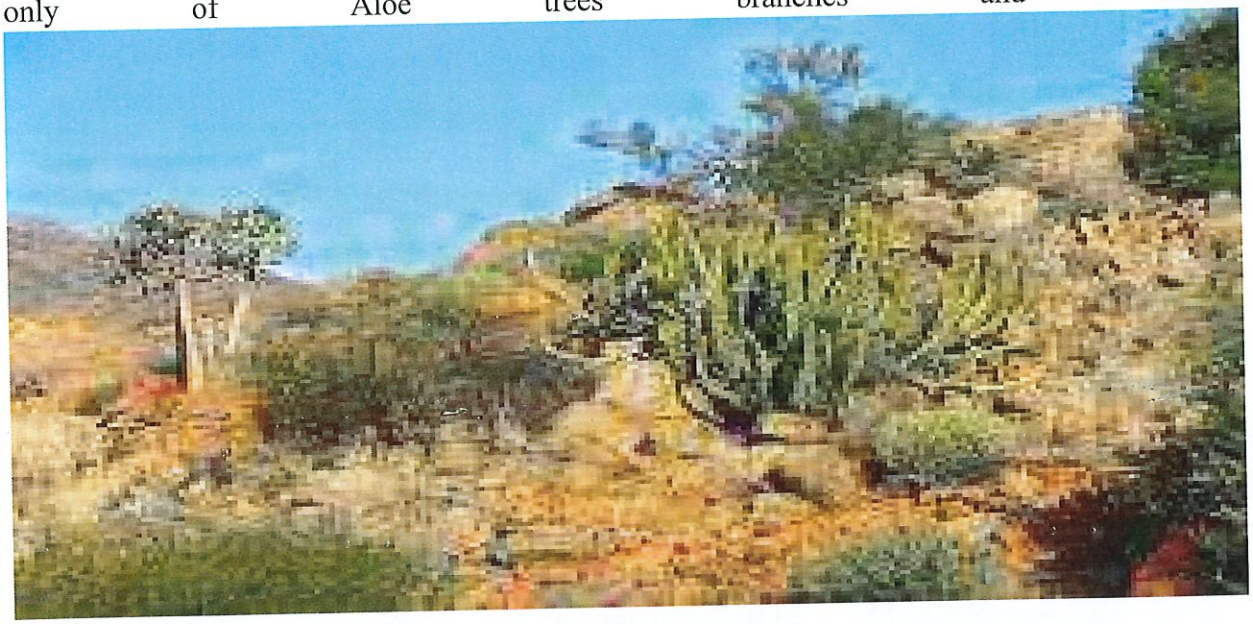
Rooifontein is some 63km east north east of Kamieskroon, 93km south east of Springbok via the Gamoep gravel road (R355) and some 101km north east of Garies via Studers Pass, Leliefontein and Nourivier.

Per the 2011 census, Rooifontein had a population of some 332 people who primarily are communal farmers, farming with sheep and goats.

Rooifontein has a primary school, 2 small general grocery stores, 3 tuckshops,1 liquor store, post office – and a clinic service at the Municipal Building. The community have access to health care twice a week.

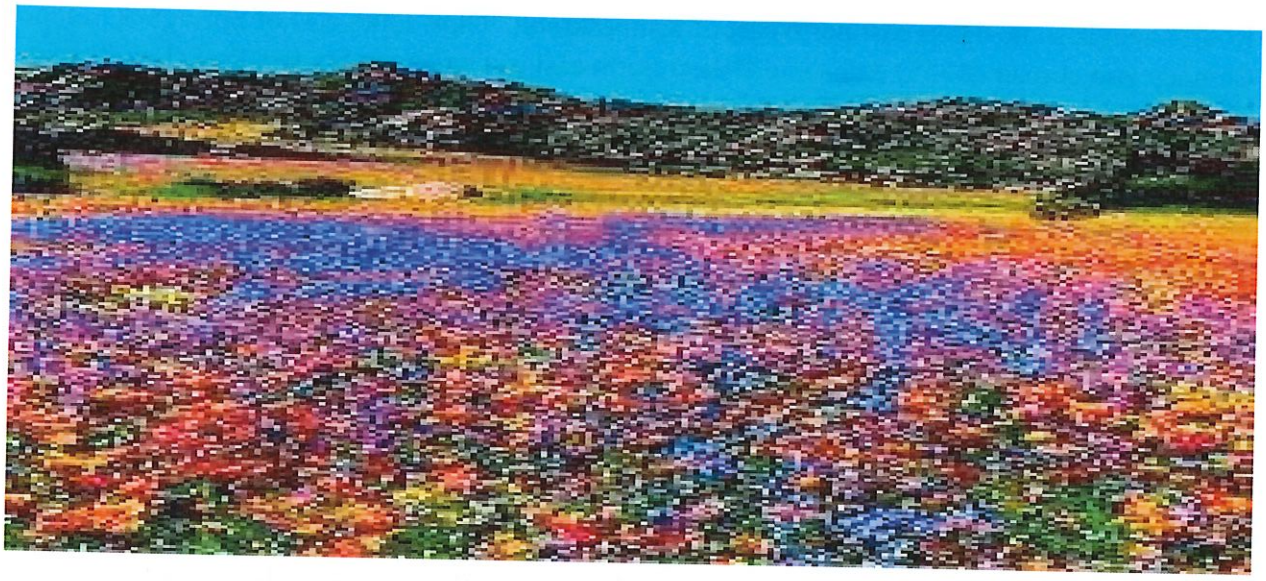
Here small groups of Namaqua descendants established themselves as stock farmers, moving seasonally between the mountains and the plains, thus the formation of villages over a period of time.

Here the earth is a rich sandy red and the name of the town was derived from this geographical feature. Rooifontein is situated on the banks of the "upper" Buffels River plus has a house built only of Aloe trees branches and stems.



NOURIVIER

Nourivier is a small village approximately 35km outside of Kamieskroon in the Northern Cape – accessible by gravel road. The surrounding areas of the village are popular during the September flower season as it is then home to an explosion of beautiful colours





PAULSHOEK

Paulshoek is one of 10 communal villages to be found in the Leliefontein Communal Area situated on the edge of the eastern plateau of the Bushmanland and the edge of the Kamiesberg massif and form part of the Kamiesberg Local Municipality, in the Namaqua Districts Municipality.

Paulshoek is some 75km east north east of Garies via Studers Pass, 27km south east of Leliefontein via Witwater and some 32km east of Platbakkies intersection on the R355.

Per the 2011 census, Paulshoek had a population of some 415 people who primarily are communal farmers, farming with sheep and goats. A primary school, a few small grocery stores, a post office, clinic and Municipal offices can be found in the village as well. The community have access to health care twice a week.

Due to grazing land becoming overcrowded at Leliefontein during the early part of the 20th century, Leliefontein saw an exodus of people many of whom settle at Moed Verloren. Paulshoek was at that time an outstation, used during the months preceding the breeding season when rams needed to be kept separate from the rest of the herd. These rams were herded communally under the guardianship of an old man named Paul. The name followed naturally: 'And every time the people asked "Where can I put my ram" the people said "Send him to Paul's corner". So the place became Paulshoek' (Ouma Betjie Cloete 1999).

Paulshoek is a small settlement in the beautiful Kamiesberge between Garies and Springbok. It can be reached by turning off from Garies and taking the Leliefontein road via the Studer's Pass or from Kamieskroon via Leliefontein and Witwater. You do not need a 4x4 to reach Paulshoek, but the access roads are gravel and it is necessary to drive slowly.



KHARKAMS

Kharkams village represents, in many ways, the typical village in Kamiesberg. Electricity reached the village in 1999 and water is available in nearly every house. Kharkams has a Combined School (Grade R up to Grade 12) as well as an ECD Centre. There are also two a general grocery stores, four tuck-shops and a clinic. The community have access to health care five days a week.

The settlement of Kharkams, 25 kilometres to the south of Kamieskroon on the N7 in Namaqualand, is an excellent flower spotting site. The Systershoog pass 16,2 km in length connects the town of Kharkams in the east with Spoegrivier in the west and provides an alternative (and much slower) route to Hondeklipbaai.

Sheep and goats are kept on villager-owned land between Kamiesberg's 16 villages. The name means 'gathering place of the Nama near abundant water' and is part of the old stock farmers' route between Leliefontein and Bethel's Klip (an archaeological site which shows evidence of human occupation dating back over 800 years). The huge boulders at Bethel's Klip were also used as a pulpit from where a Rev. Shaw gave sermons to the local Khoikhoi. This has given the site its alternative name, 'Preacher's Rock'. Kharkams accommodates also the Methodist Pastorie and church as well as Roman Catholic-, VGK and Apostolic Church.



TWEERIVIER

Tweerivier is one of ten communal villages to be found in the Leliefontein Communal Area, is situated in the middle of the mountainous central Kamiesberg escarpment which is part of the Kamiesberg Municipality in the Namaqua Districts Municipality. Tweerivier is some 17 km east of Kharkams and 23 km west of Leliefontein.

Per the 2011 census, Tweerivier had a population of some 252 people who 25ublic25ly are communal farmers, farming with sheep and goats.

Tweerivier has a primary school, a general grocery store and a clinic at the Municipal Building. The community have access to health care twice a week.

Here small groups of Namaqua descendants established themselves as stock farmers, moving seasonally between the mountains and the plains, thus the formation of villages over a period of time.

Tweerivier takes its name from being below the junction of two perennial streams, namely Twee rivier and the other Cloetesdrif, which rise to the north and east of the village and extends south to join the Groenrivier near the village of Kheis which enters the Atlantic Ocean some 80km south of Hondeklip Bay.

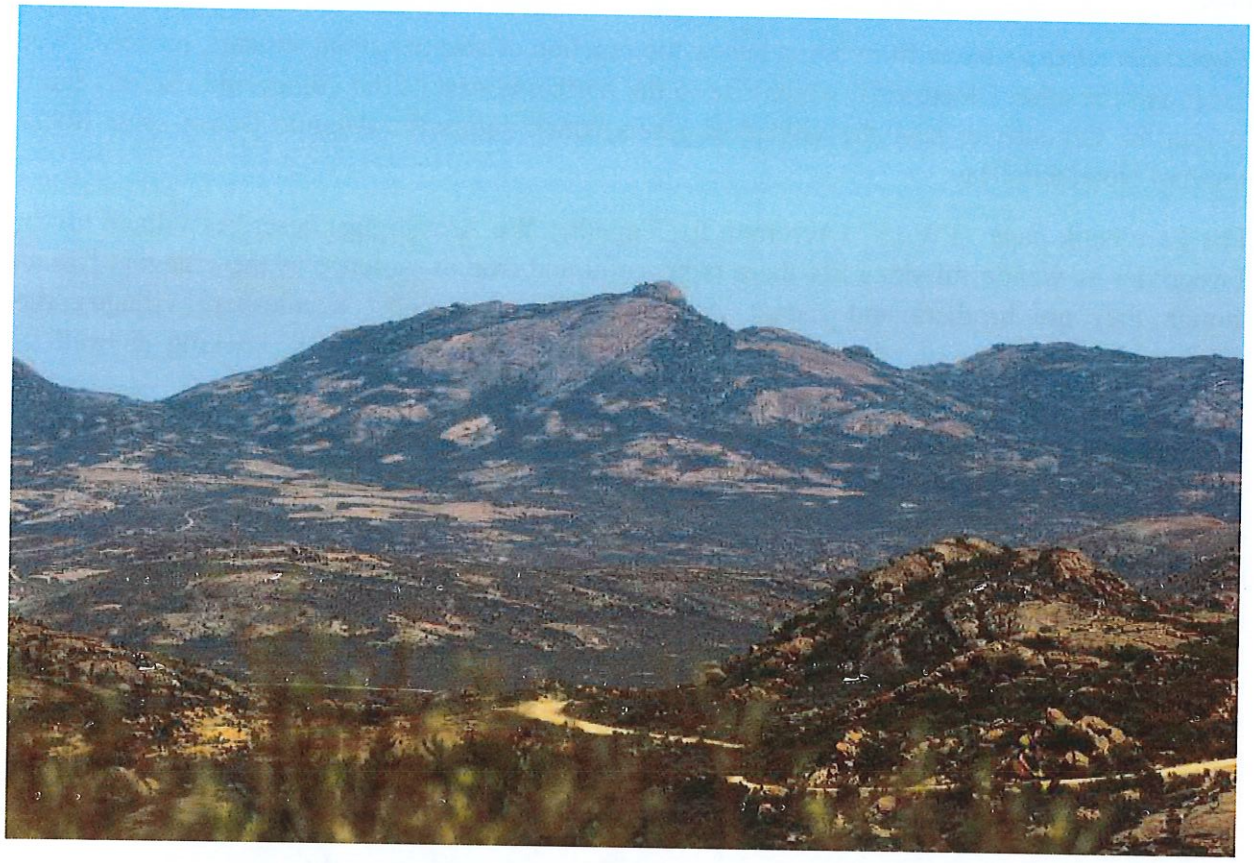
The Face book page "TWAS" (Acronym for Together We Are Strong) describes village life in Tweerivier as wonderful since life there is peaceful and free of violence as the villagers live as though they are brothers and sisters. As can be found in most Kamiesberg villages, the inhabitants have a lot of talent such as singing, musicians, needlework, cooking as well as authors.



KAMIESKROON

Kamieskroon was founded in 1924, when the Dutch Reformed Church bought the land to relocate from Bowesdorp, 8 km to the north of the current location of the town. The move was forced by a shortage of water and restricted space for the growth of the town. Kamieskroon is located at the foot of the "Kroon" (Afrikaans, meaning Crown), a small koppie that resembles the crown of a king and is near Sneeukop, the second highest peak in Namaqualand. Also located close to Kamieskroon is Boesmankop, a mountain that resembles a Boesman (Bushman or San) lying on his back.

This small town in the Kamiesberg Local Municipality, lying in the foothills of the Kamiesberge at an elevation of approximately 800 m (2 600 ft.). The town is more or less in the center of Namaqualand, about 70 km to the south of Springbok . It is known mainly for its abundance of wild flowers during spring.



LELIEFONTEIN

Leliefontein is a village in the Kamiesberg Mountains, 18 miles (29 km) south-east of Kamieskroon, Leliefontein was established in 1816 by Reverend Barnabas Shaw, a Wesleyan missionary. The mission was established on a farm awarded to the Namaquas by the Dutch governor Rijk Tulbagh. It is probably named after the many white Lilies found in the area.

It was the site of the 1902 Leliefontein massacre, during the final stages of the Second Anglo-Boer

The Namaqualand Mission is said to have begun on 23 October 1816, the day when Jantjie Wildshutt and his elders invited the Rev Barnabas Shaw and his wife, Jane, to accompany them to the home of their Namaqua tribe, "Neiemies" or "Place of Gathering", to become their missionaries. Realising their need for a teacher who could tell them about the "Great One in the Sky," they met Shaw near Cape Town who accepted their invitation. Neiemies later became Lilyfountain.

Shaw arrived in Cape Town earlier that year and was denied permission to preach by the Governor, Lord Charles Somerset. The London Missionary Society missionary Schmelen, told him of the need for missionaries in the interior, thus whilst looking for a place to set up a mission station, he met Wildshutt. Upon arrival at Lilyfountain, Shaw recorded: "We took up our abode in a hut belonging to one of the natives which had neither chimney, not even a door, and all in all, was of small dimension".

The Namaqua people were hunters and lived a communal nomadic life. Shaw taught them agricultural skills and also started a school. In 1817, about 50 people where learning to read, and amongst Shaw's early helpers where members of the Links family. In 1826 the first proper school was erected. Education has always been a priority at Lilyfountain, and in 1970 a Hostel was built. Today the school caters for learners from Grade 1 to Grade 8.

The Lilyfountain Mission was the first indigenous Methodist Society in South Africa. Shaw taught the people Methodist discipline and doctrines, and witnessed with the plough and spade as well as with his preaching, prayer and reading of scripture. One of Shaw's achievements was to transform a nomadic farming community into an educated settled agricultural community with a permanent place of abode. Although they farmed cattle, sheep and goats, Shaw taught crop farming and horticulture.

Spiritually the Namaqualand Mission has come a long way. In 1817 Shaw had ten converts. By 1833 there were 120 full members and in 1835 they started to contribute financially to the Mission. By 1850 the membership had grown to 163 and today there's almost 5 000 members.

Shaw's contextual and caring ministry begun in 1816 which included a respect for Namaqua culture of never "eating, drinking or smoking alone" continues to this day. Icy and Legislative Context



1.3 SENCUS 2022

MEDIA RELEASE: Census 2022 Population Count Results 10 October 2023

Background

Census 2022 was the fourth census after the advent of democracy, with the other three being conducted in 1996, 2001 and 2011. This was the first-ever digital census in South Africa. Census information was collected via a digital questionnaire, using three modes of collection: Computer-assisted Personal Interview (CAPI), where fieldworkers visited households and conducted the interview using a hand-held device; Computer-assisted Telephone Interview (CATI), where households were interviewed telephonically; and Computer-assisted Web Interview (CAWI), where the29ublicc was able to complete the questionnaire via the internet.

A population and housing census is the foremost exercise in the ten-year cycle of the statistical programme of a country, presenting an opportunity to obtain data on key demographic indicators such as population size and composition, households and their living circumstances, and geographical distribution across the country. It provides the population denominators for basic health and socio-economic indicators, and forms the basis for revising population estimates and projections.

Statistics South Africa (Stats SA) is mandated by the Statistics Act,1999 (Act No. 6 of 1999) to collect data for official statistics and to conduct a census.

Census 2022 data collection started on census reference night, 02 February 2022, and ended in May 2022 with provinces finishing data collection at different times. Censuses in South Africa were traditionally conducted in October but, due to the global COVID-19 pandemic, the census had to be postponed to February 2022. Census 2022 was affected by unprecedented challenges, including riots, ongoing COVID-19 lockdowns and climate change issues such as flooding in some parts of the country.

Data quality assurance processes were built into all census phases, including in-built validation rules in data collection instruments and fieldwork monitoring throughout the enumeration period. A post-enumeration survey – which is an independent survey conducted for the evaluation of the census – was done immediately after completion of census enumeration. Additionally, an independent assessment of Census 2022 was conducted by a team of pre-eminent and independent local and international statistical experts under the guidance of the Statistics Council. The Statistics Council has recommended to the Minister in the Presidency and the Statistician-General that the Census 2022 is 'Fit for Purpose' and that the results of the census will be useful for planning government service delivery.

Population

The Census 2022 results show that the population of South Africa was 62 million in 2022, increasing from 51,7 million in 2011. This represents an average annual growth rate of 1,8% between the two periods, which is the largest since 1996. Gauteng remained the province with the highest population (15 million), while Northern Cape has the smallest population at 1,3 million. About 56% of the country's population lives in three provinces, namely Gauteng, KwaZulu-Natal and the Western Cape. The Western Cape has moved from being the 5th-largest province in terms of population size in 1996 to being the 3rd largest in 2022.

Black Africans remain the dominant population group (81,4%), followed by coloureds at 8,2%, whites at 7,3% and Indians/Asians at 2,7%. There has been a steady decline in the proportion of the white population, from 11% in 1996 to 7,3% in 2022.

Migration

Over the intercensal period, 2011 to 2022, the results show that five provinces gained population from other provinces, while four showed a loss of population. The five provinces with positive net migration are the following: Gauteng, KwaZulu-Natal, Western Cape, Northern Cape and Mpumalanga.

Educational enrolment and attainment

There were more than 3 million children aged 0–4 years who participated in Early Childhood Development (ECD) programmes. The Western Cape (69,5%) and Gauteng (66%) showed the highest percentage of children attending ECD facilities. Children in Northern Cape (56,7%) and North West (52,4%) were more likely not to participate in ECD programmes when compared to their counterparts in other provinces.

The Census 2022 results show that the percentage of persons aged 5–24 years attending an educational institution increased by only 3% from 70,1% in 1996 to 73,4% in 2022. The biggest increase was observed in the Free State, from 73,1% to 76,8% between 2011 and 2022.

Also important is that the black African and coloured populations tend to be concentrated in the secondary education level, which may suggest higher dropout rates and limited progression to tertiary education. Conversely, the white and Indian/Asian population groups are more likely to be concentrated in the completed secondary school and post-secondary education levels.

In terms of post-school education, the results show that disparities primarily exist among different population groups. For instance, regardless of sex, the white population group

reported the highest percentage of post-school educational attainment, followed by the Indian/Asian population with half as much as that for the white population group. However, notable sex differences appear, primarily within the black African and coloured population groups. Both groups show lower levels of post-school education, and these levels are nearly comparable between the two population groups. The post-school enrolment rate for both males and females among the black African and coloured population groups is below the national average of 11,5%. In contrast, the post-school enrolment rate is nearly double for Indians/Asians and four times higher for whites.

Housing

Census 2022 recorded 17,8 million households in South Africa, an increase from 14 million in 2011, and almost double the 9 million households recorded in 1996.

Gauteng and KwaZulu-Natal accounted for just under 50% of all households in the country, with 5,3 million and 2,9 million households respectively. The Northern Cape was the province with the fewest households at about 330 000.

The number of households who reside in informal dwellings has declined from 13,6% in 2011 to 8,1% in 2022; furthermore, households residing in formal dwelling units increased to 88,5%, an increase from the 65,1% recorded in 1996.

Household headship is almost evenly split between males and females. Female headship in KwaZulu-Natal, the Eastern Cape and Limpopo is higher than the national average, with 53,1%, 51,9% and 51,6% female-headed households respectively.

Access to basic services

Access to basic services has generally shown an upward trend from 2001 to 2022. Over 80% of households in the country had access to piped water, either inside their dwellings or inside their yards. The proportion of households relying on piped water sources outside of yards or community stands has decreased over time. In 1996, 19,6% of households relied on such sources, but by 2022 this figure had fallen to 8,9%.

However, it is important to note that certain regions, specifically Eastern Cape (19,5%) and Limpopo (20,5%), still face challenges in accessing piped water. Moreover, households depending on water vendors or tankers as their primary water source showed an increase from 1,9% in 2001 to 5,8% in 2022.

The Western Cape (93,9%) and Gauteng (89,7%) showed the highest levels of access to flush toilets. The Northern Cape still contends with 4,5% of households using bucket toilets as their primary toilet facility. KwaZulu-Natal shows a mix, with 58,9% using flush toilets, 28,5% using pit latrines, and 7% using chemical toilets. In the Northern Cape and Eastern Cape, 4,5% and 3% of households, respectively, reported having no toilet facilities. The majority of the households in Limpopo, i.e. more than half (57,9%), used a pit latrine with/without ventilation pipe as their main type of toilet facility.

The results also recorded an upward trend in households whose refuse was removed at least once a week by a local authority/private service, with an increase from 52,1% in Census 1996 to 66,3% in Census 2022.

Households in the Western Cape (88,7%) and Gauteng (85,0%) were more likely to have their refuse removed regularly (at least once a week), in contrast with the remaining seven provinces which recorded percentages below the national average (66,3%). Limpopo recorded the lowest percentage (32,0%) of households with regular refuse removal services (at least once a week).

More than 90% of households had access to electricity for lighting, a substantial increase from the 58% recorded in 1996. The provinces with the largest proportion of access to electricity were Western Cape (96,5%), KwaZulu-Natal (96,7%) and Limpopo (95,5%), which all had slightly higher proportions than the national average of 94,7%.

Ends.

Note to editors:

About Census and how data will be disseminated

Census data will be disseminated in phases. Phase 1, which launches on 10 October 2023, will give users access to a range of indicators at national, provincial and municipal level. Phase 2 will include electronic products such as the Community Profiles and more in-depth reports on particular themes.

Place names

Places in Kamiesberg Municipality

- Garies

- Hondeklipbaai
- Kamassies
- Kamiesberg NU
- Kamieskroon
- Karkams
- Kheis
- Klipfontein
- Koingnaas
- Leliefontein
- Lepelsfontein
- Nourivier
- Paulshoek
- Rooifontein
- Soebatsfontein
- Spoegrivier
- Tweerivier

STATS 2022

POPULATION

Population Group	
Black African	656
Coloured	13 357
Indian or Asian	92
White	877
Other	143
Unspecified	5
TOTAL	15 130

Gender	
Male	7 437
Female	7 693
TOTAL	**15 130**

Household Size	
1	878
2	854
3	653
4	470
5	355
6	160
7	94
8	56
9	27
10	19
11	8
12	-
13	-
14	-
15	-
16	-
17	-
18	2
19	-
20	-
Total	**3576**

Relationship	
Head/acting head	4976
Husband/wife/partner	1664
Biological son/daughter	4154
Adopted son/daughter	82
Foster child	53
Stepchild	105
Brother/sister	411
Parent(mother/father)	108
Parent – in - law	18
Grand/greatgrand child	2027
Son/daughter-in-law	37
Brother/sister-in-law	24
Grandmother/father	3
Other relative(e.g aunt, uncle ,niece or nephew)	825

Non-related-person	315
Not applicable	115
Unspecified	214
Total	**15 130**

DISABILITY

Disability Status	Seeing	Hearing	Communi cation	Walking	Remem - bering	Self - Care
No difficulty	10 549	12 117	12 409	11 950	12 347	12 674
Some difficulty	2 139	809	585	820	612	241
A lot of difficulty	374	153	74	279	111	50
Cannot do at all	18	3	13	29	5	111
Do not know	16	16	16	18	21	21
Not applicable	1 130	1 130	1 130	1 130	1 130	1 130
Unspecified	904	904	904	904	904	904
	15 130	**15 130**	**15 130**	**15 130**	**15 130**	**15 130**

EDUCATION

Highest level of Education	
Primary	4 747
Secondary	7 469
Tertiary	447
Other	58
Do not know	330
Not applicable	1 159
No schooling	425
Unspecified	494
Total	**15 130**

Attendance at an ECD Institution	
Creche/educare Centre	298
Pre – school/nursery school/ Grade 00/Grade 000 Grade R	113
Day mother?Gogo/Childminder	63
Home/community play group	26
Other (specify)	-
Do not know	4
None	510
Not applicable	14 115
Unspecified	-
Total	**15 130**

Field of Education	
Agriculture, Agriculture Operations & Related Science	3
Architecture and the Build Environment	11
Arts (Visual and Performing Arts)	8
Finance and Accounting	8
Business, Economics and Management Sciences	26
Communication, Journalism and Related Studies	3
Computer and Information Sciences	11
Education	169
Engineering	45
Health Professions and Related Clinical Sciences	61
Family Ecology and Consumer Sciences	3
Languages, Linguististics or Literature	-
Law	16
Life Sciences	-
Physical Sciences	-
Mathematics and Statistics	-
Military Sciences	-
Philosophy, Religion and Theology	16
Psychology	-
Public Management and Services	18
Social Sciences	8
Hospitality, Including Tourism	13
Security & Intelligence Services	3
Office Administration	16
Electrical Infrastructure	11
Other	55
Do not Know	5
Not Applicable	14 625
Unspecified	-
Total	**15 130**

Attendance and Educational Institution	
No	10 659
Yes, Pre - School	61
Yes, Primary School (Grade R – 7)	1 911
Yes, Secondary School (Grade 8 – 12)	727
Yes, Special School for learners with disabilities	5
Yes, Technical Vocational Education and Training (TVET), formerly known as Further Education and Training College (FET), including Private Colleges	166
Yes, Other colleges (including Private and Public Nursing College, Agricultural College and Police College)	150
Yes, Higher Educational Institution (Including University/University of Technology and Private Higher Education Institution)	234

Yes, Community Education and Training College (Including Adult Education and Training Learning Centre)	-
Yes, Home – Based Education /Home Schooling	8
Yes, Other	13
Do not Know	16
Not Applicable	1 130
Unspecified	50
Total	**15 130**

PEOPLE AND SERVICES

Piped Water	
Piped (tap) water inside dwelling	5 804
Piped (tap) water inside the yard	8 708
Piped (tap) water on community stand: distance less than 200m from dwelling	13
Piped (tap) water to community stand: less than 200m and 500m from dwelling	13
Piped (tap) water to community stand: distance less than 500m and 1 000m from dwelling	8
Piped (tap) water on community stand: distance greater than 1 000m (1km)from dwelling	-
No access to piped (tap) water	197
Total	**14 743**

Energy or Fuel for Lightning	
Electricity from Mains	14 422
Other source of electricity (e.g generator etc.)	16
Gas	11
Paraffin	-
Candles	176
Solar	57
Other	45
None	16
Total	**14 743**

Toilet Facilities	
Flush toilet connected to a public sewerage system	5 584
Flush toilet connected to a septic or conservancy tank	2 540
Chemical toilet	124
Pit latrine/toilet with ventilation pipe (VIP)	4 692
Pit latrine without ventilation pipe	1 007

Ecological toilet (e.g urine diversion, enviroloo, etc)	32
Bucket Toilet (collected by municipality)	37
Bucket toilet (emptied by household)	96
None	621
Other	11
Total	**14 743**

Energy or Fuel for Cooking	
Electricity from Mains	11 839
Other source of electricity (e.g generator etc.)	-
Gas	2 528
Paraffin	-
Wood	321
Coal	-
Animal Dung	-
Solar	13
Other	18
None	24
Total	**14 743**

Source of Water	
Regional/local water scheme (operated)by municipality /other service provider)	13 335
Borehole	1 148
Spring	8
Rain – water Tank	58
Dam/pool/stagnant water	29
Flowing water/river/stream	-
Water Vendor	3
Water Tanker	105
Other	58
Total	**14 743**

Refuse or Rubbish	
Removed by local authority/private company/community members at least once a week	8 288
Removed by local authority/private company/community members less often	1 117
Communal Refuse Dump	16
Communal Container/central collection point	5 195
Own Refuse Dump	111
Dump or Leave Rubbish anywhere (no rubbish	-

disposal)	
Other	18
Total	**14 743**

Type of Main Dwelling	
Flat or Apartment in a block of flats / flat or Apartment in a block of flats in a complex.	17
Cluster house in Complex	2
Town house (semi -detached house complex)	-
Semi-detached house	21
Formal Dwelling/house/flat/room/in backyards/servants quarters/granny flat/cottage	19
Informal dwelling/shack in back yard	48
Informal dwelling/shack not in back yard, e.g in an informal /squatter settlement or on farm	58
Caravan/tent	2
Other	12
Not Applicable	-
Traditional dwelling/hut/structure made of traditional materials	23
Formal Dwelling/House or Brick/Concrete block structure on a separate stand or Yard or on a farm	3 373
Total	**3 576**

Tenure Status	
Rented from private individual	211
Rented from other (including municipality and social housing)	89
Owned but not yet paid off	35
Owned and fully paid off	1 680
Occupied rent - free	720
Other	226
Do not Know	137
Not Applicable	-
Unspecified	477
Total	**3 576**

Access to Internet	
Home with an internet connection in dwelling	148
Use Cellphone or any Other mobile device	1 872
From place of Work	6
From a library/community hall/Thusong Centre	4
From School/University/College	4

From an internet cafe	-
Public Wi-Fi	55
Other	41
No access to internet services	971
Unspecified	476
Total	**3 576**

1.3.1 Constitutional Context

The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, together with Chapter 5 of the Municipal Systems Act, 2000 (Act 32 of 2000) had a substantial impact on the traditional role of Local Governments. In addition to providing municipal services, municipalities must (by law) now lead, manage and plan for development through a process of Integrated Development Planning. Municipalities are inter alias co-responsible to eradicate poverty, boost local economic development, creating jobs and generally to promote the process of reconstruction and development.

The Integrated Development Plan (IDP) is the product of the Integrated Development Planning process through which municipalities prepare a strategic development plan, for a five-year period.

1.3.2 Municipal Systems Act, Act No. 32 of 2000 (MSA)

The **Municipal Systems Act, Act 32 of 2000** states in section 25 (1) "Each Municipal Council must, within a prescribed period after the start of its elected term, **adopt a single, inclusive and strategic plan for the development of the municipality**-which

a) **Links, integrates and coordinates plans** and takes into account proposals for the development of the municipality;

b) **Aligns the resources and capacity** of the municipality with the implementation of the plan;

c) Forms the **policy framework** and general basis on which budgets must be based;

d) **Complies** with the provisions of this chapter and; and

e) Is **compatible** with National and Provincial development plans and planning requirements binding on the municipality in terms of legislation."

Section 26 of the System Act outlines the **core components of the IDP**, "an integrated development plan must reflect –

a) The **Municipal vision** for the long term development of the municipality with special emphasis on the municipality's most critical development and internal transformation;

b) An assessment of the existing **level of development in the municipality**, which must include an identification of communities which does not have access to basic services.

c) The Councils **development priorities and objectives** for its elected term, including its local economic development aims and its internal transformation needs;

d) The council's **development strategies** which must be **aligned to the with** any **National or Provincial sectoral plans** and planning requirements binding on the Municipality in terms of legislation;

e) A spatial development framework which must include the provision of basic guidelines for a land use management system for the municipality;

f) The council's **operational strategies**

g) Applicable **disaster management plans**;

h) **A financial plan**, which must include a budget projection for at least the next three years; and **key performance indicators and performance targets** determined in terms of section 41."

In addition, Section 27 speaks to drafting a district framework plan for the IDP, section 28 speaks to the IDP adoption process and section 29 describes the process to be followed.

The IDP is a municipality's principal strategic planning instrument which deals with the most critical development needs and opportunities of the municipal area (external focus) as well as the most critical governance needs of the organization (internal focus)

1.3.3 Spatial Planning Land Use Management Act, Act 16 of 2013 (SPLUMA)

The Municipal Systems Act requires municipalities to adopt IDPs that contain Spatial Development Frameworks (SDFs) as a core component. These SDFs must include basic guidelines for a land use management system for the municipality. The SDF as contemplated in the Municipal Systems Act, are further elaborated in the Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act.

Section 21 (b) and (c) of SPLUMA requires municipal spatial development frameworks to include statements that demonstrate the short term (5year) plan for the spatial form of a municipality as well as more strategically show a longer – term vision statement for the desired spatial growth and development pattern of the municipality for the next 10 to 20 years.

The principles set out in SPLUMA inform the goals within which land use should be shaped and call on all three spheres of government to redress spatial imbalances and improve access to land.

The Department of Rural Development and Land Reform avail the amount of R 650 000.00 to compile the SDF for Kamiesberg Municipality.

1.4 Purpose of the Guidelines

This guideline document is developed in terms of Section 37 of the Municipal Systems Act, which empowers the Minister responsible for local government to issue the guidelines on drafting, adoption, or reviewing on integrated development plans. In this regard, the purpose of the revised IDP guidelines is to:

- Assist municipalities to develop IDPs that are legally compliant, reassert the strategic nature of IDPs, and ensure that they respond to key national and provincial policy imperatives.
- Provide guidance on the adoption of IDPs during an election year.
- Describe the process of transversal planning for municipal departments.
- Clarify the roles and responsibilities of stakeholders in the development, review and implementation of IDPs.
- Clarify the relationship between the IDPs and One Plans.

These IDP guidelines are targeted at:

- All categories of municipalities for the development and implementation of IDPs in the context of the National Development Plan (NDP), Integrated Urban Development Framework (IUDF) and other policy imperatives. Whilst these guidelines are relevant to all types of municipalities, they are specifically geared towards the needs of non – metropolitan municipalities.
- National and Provincial departments with regards to their roles and responsibilities in the development and implementation of IDPs.
- Government entities, traditional leadership, private enterprises (including mining companies) and other stakeholders with regards to their role in the development and implementation of IDPs.

CHAPTER 2. DEVELOPMENT of LEGALY COMPLIANT IDPs

2.1 Process and Content Framework

The Municipal Systems Act and the Municipal Planning and Performance Management Regulations (2001) elaborate on the process requirements for the development and review of an IDP. While the development of an IDP generally requires phases outlined below, it is also important to recognize that new municipal councils can adopt the IDP, in part or in whole, of the preceding council. This, however, still requires the municipality to follow the required process outlined in Section 29 detailed below.

The 5year IDP development process involves the following key steps, namely:

1. District Development Framework and Process Plan
2. Drafting of IDP Document
3. Submission to MEC and publication
4. Implementation
5. Review

2.1.1 Development of the District Development Framework

Section 27 of the Municipal Systems Act requires that each district municipality, after following a consultative process with the local municipalities within its area, adopt a framework for integrated development planning that binds both the district municipality and the local municipalities.

The district IDP development framework serves as a coordination tool to ensure that priorities, programs and projects of local municipalities and the district are aligned with national priorities and programs in order to facilitate integrated development. This framework is developed for a five – year period and is aligned to the IDP cycle and electoral mandate and should be reviewed annually. It should provide direction to the local municipalities on development priorities to be addressed. A well – formulated district idp development framework can be used as a high – level scorecard to monitor and measure the performance of the district, and its contribution to the provincial and national development agenda.

The District Development Framework must do the following:

- Identify all legally binding plans and planning requirements relevant to the district or local municipalities;
- Identify all matters in the IDPs of the district or its local municipalities which require alignment;
- Specify the principles to be applied and approach to be used in these matters; and
- Determine the procedures for consultation between the district and local municipalities.

2.1.2 Process Plan

Section 28 of the MSA requires all municipal councils to adopt a written process to guide how it will plan, draft, adopt and review its IDP. Municipalities need to inform and consult with the local community before this is adopted.

In some instances, districts do not separate between the district IDP development framework and district process plan as contemplated in Section 28 of the MSA. These documents are usually seen as one thing. The process plan for the district municipality can include the development of a district IDP framework as one of the activities.

Essentially, the IDP Process Plan articulates the programme of action that will be followed in the development of the IDP, and covers the following:

- The distribution of roles and responsibilities in the IDP development process;
- Institutional arrangements for the process;
- Mechanisms and procedures for alignment with external stakeholders;
- Relevant and binding planning and policies requirements at national and provincial sphere, and
- Cost estimates for the planning process.

2.2 Drafting of an IDP

The five critical phases involve in drafting an IDP:

- **Phase 1 – Research, Information Collection and Analysis**: During this phase the current situation in the municipality is analyzed. Problematic issues impacting on the lives of people are identified and prioritized. In identifying the problems, the municipality should consider people's perception of their problems, but should also use facts and figures to quantify these.

- **Phase 2 – Vision, Objectives and Strategies:** Once the municipality understands the problems affecting the people of the area and their causes, as well as opportunities and unique aspects, it must then formulate the solutions to address the problems and gain benefit from the opportunities. It is important to ensure that the key requirements of the NDP, IUDF and DDM are factored in. Key priorities should be to address poverty, inequality and unemployment. IUDF: Spatial integration, inclusion and access, growth and governance.

This phase includes the formulation of:

(1) **VISION** – This is a statement which indicates the long – term view of what the municipality wants to become. It should guide municipalities transformational initiatives and become the foundation for broader strategies. Ideally vision statements should be short, concise, forward looking and inspirational. It should avoid jargon or over – idealistic statements.
(2) **Strategic Objectives** – The development objectives provide a practical statement of what the municipality wishes to achieve to work towards the vision. The objectives should bridge the gap between the current reality and the vision. These should take into account the objectives outlined in the NDP, IUDF and DDM.
(3) **DEVELOPMENT STRATEGIES** – Once the municipality knows where it wants to go (vision) and what it needs to achieve to realise the vision (objectives), it must then develop strategies. These provide answers to the question of how the municipality will reach its objectives. They are strategic decisions about the most appropriate ways and means to achieve the objectives.

- Phase 3 – Development of Programs and Projects

Closely links to phase 2 above, this phase involves the identification of programs and projects that the municipality intends to undertake in this five year period. These should be developed with a constant reference to the requirements of the NDP, IUDF, DDM as well as other sectoral policies. During this phase, the municipality should strive to get the input of other spheres of government, state entities, as well as key private sector players, on what their development programs, projects or intentions are, within the municipality.

- Phase 4 – Integration and Consolidation

Once the programs and projects have been articulated, there is a need to step back and assess the relevance and interdependence of the programs and projects. This is done to ensure the following:

- That the programs and projects support the Vision and Objectives of the municipality.
- That the programs and projects respond or address the priority problems outlined in the analysis phase.
- That the programs and projects comply with the applicable policy and legislative framework.

This phase gives the municipality an opportunity to harmonies their programs and projects in terms of content, location and timing in order to arrive at consolidated and integrated strategy. Its vital for the municipality to ensure that the programs and projects being implemented by "external" non – municipal role players are harmonized with the municipality's own programs, to ensure that they gain maximum benefit from each other.

Once the consolidation process has been concluded, the following components of the IDP should be develop:

- A financial plan.
- An indication of how, over the five – year period, the municipality and other external parties, including the SOEs and private sector, will invest capital in the municipality.
- An indication of the spatial pattern of development in the municipality – this should provide a spatial summary of the problems, opportunities, strategies and programs and must reflect the SDF.
- Integrated sectoral programs (LED, HIV, Poverty Alleviation, Gender Equity, Disaster Management etc.).
- A Performance Management System.
- A high – level institutional plan that outlines how the municipality is geared to undertake the programs and projects required.
- Reference to sector plans.

- Phase 5 – Approval, Adoption and Publication

Once the IDP has been compiled, a draft must be submitted to the municipal council for consideration and approval. The MFMA requires municipalities to table both a draft IDP and Budget at least 90 days before the start of the financial year (by the end of March).

The council should consider whether the IDP correctly identified the issues / problems that affect the municipality and the extend to which the strategies and projects will contribute to addressing the problems. The council must also ensure that the IDP complies with the legal requirements before it is approved.

The draft IDP is then published for public comment for at least 21 days. Relevant comments should be incorporated. Once the IDP is amended with this input, the council can consider it for approval.

A full council must approve the IDP. The act also notes that the media and members of the public may not be excluded from such a council meeting. Once adopted, municipalities must than given notice to the public within 14 days of adoption of the IDP and published a summary of the IDP.

2.3 Provincial Assessment and MEC comments

Municipalities must submit a copy of the approved IDP to the MEC for Local Government in the Province within 10 days of the adoption of the plan. The copy of the IDP must be accompanied by a summary of the process (together with a statement that the process has been complied with) and a copy of the district framework adopted (for Districts).

The Municipal Systems Act does not require the MEC to approve the IDP, only to assess whether it complies with the requirements of the Act and that it is not in conflict with the IDPs and strategies of other municipalities and organs of state.

Within 30 days of receiving the IDP, the MEC may request the municipal council to adjust the plan. If such a request is made, within 30 days a municipal council must adjust its IDP or object to the MEC in writing.

2.4 Annual IDP Review and Amendment Process

Section 34 of the Municipal Systems Act states the following about the annual review and amendment of the IDP:

A municipal council must review its integrated development plan-

(1) annually in accordance with an assessment of its performance measurements in terms of section 41: and
(2) to the extent that changing circumstances so demand; and may amend its integrated development plan in accordance with a prescribed process.

2.4.1 Review

On an annual basis, municipalities are required to review how they have performed against the pre-determined objectives outlined in the IDP. This is a form of institutional performance review and will inform how the municipality adjust its focus and operations in order to meet the targets.

The following are some of the key questions that should be asked when reviewing the IDP:

- Are there any significant changes in budget availability?
- Are there any significant changes in the spatial layout of the area?
- Are there any significant changes within the specific municipal area that has a reasonable impact on projects, programs or livelihood of the community?

2.4.2 Amendments

Whitin the term of office, a municipal IDP may need to be amended, when there have been significant unexpected changes within the municipality that require a reorganization of the municipal priorities and budgets. IDP amendments should only be required under exceptional circumstances and should not be done without significant justification.

PROCESS TO AMEND THE IDP

Review	
Council to review the IDP based on:	Annually
• Assessment of performance measures	
• Demand based on changing circumstances	
Amendment (if required)	
a) A council member or committee introduces a proposal to amend the IDP	If / when required
b) A memo detailing the reasons to amend	

c) Give reasonable notice to members of council	
d) Published proposed amendment for 21 days	
e) Consultation between the district and locals	
f) Council adopt the IDP	

CHAPTER 3. ADOPTION OF AN IDP DURING AN ELECTION YEAR

Even though the IDP is a 5 – year plan linked to the council term of office, the norm has been that the first year of such new council is primarily confined to implementing the last year of the previous Councils IDP. The new council will then start the process to develop their 5 – year IDP with the of implementation in the second year. This process mostly leads to an overlap of the last year of outgoing council into the new council.

3.1 Legal Requirements

According to Section 25 (1) of the Municipal Systems Act, each municipal council must adopt an IDP after the start of its elected term within a prescribed period. An election represents the start of a 5 – year IDP development process. Section 25 (3) does allow the municipal council to adopt the IDP of the preceding council. However, this needs to be done in accordance with the process prescribed.

Section 24 (2) of the Municipal Structures Act (117 of 1998) indicates that the Minister after consultation with the Electoral Commission, by notice in the Government Gazette, should call and set a date for an election of all municipal councils within 90 days of the date of the expiry of the term of municipal council.

CHAPTER 4. TRANSVERAL PLANNING

This challenge persists even though Section 25 (1) of the MSA specifically require a municipal council to adopt a single, inclusive and strategic plan for the development of the municipality which must link, integrate and co – ordinate plans for the development of the municipality.

The absence of transversal planning in municipalities is the contributing factor for the weak integration of municipal plan, a prerequisite for integrated development. Therefore, the objective of this section is to highlight the importance of transversal planning in municipalities towards achieving integrated service delivery. The sector that needs to be seamlessly integrated include housing delivery, transport, water services, electricity, waste management, disaster management, climate change economic development etc.

4.1 Legal Requirements

This is in part through the Municipal systems Act, which details what the IDP must address and partly through sector legislation indicating requirements for sector plans.

4.1.1 Municipal Systems Act, Act 32 of 2000

The essence of integrated planning is captured in Section 25 of the MSA. This section of the Act enjoins municipalities through the IDP to link, integrate and co-ordinate plans for the development of the municipality and align the resources and capacity of the municipality with the implementation of the plan. Secondly, the MSA through Section 26 identifies the core components that must be harmonized in the integrated development plan such as development strategies, spatial development frameworks, operational strategies, disaster management plans, financial plans and key performance indicators, including targets.

Integrated planning across departments (intra-municipal), inter-sphere and inter-sectoral has always been a requirement of the IDP, however, it has been difficult to achieve in practice.

4.1.2 Human Settlements: The Housing Act, Act 107 of 1997

The Housing Act through Section 2 enjoins national, provincial and local spheres of government to ensure that housing development is based on integrated development planning. Section 9 of the Act requires that municipalities, as part of its integrated development planning process take all reasonable and necessary steps with the framework of national and provincial housing policy to ensure that-

- The inhabitants of its area of jurisdiction have access to adequate housing on a progressive basis;

- Conditions not conducive to the health and safety of inhabitants of its area of jurisdiction are prevented or remove;
- Services in respect of water, sanitation, electricity, roads, stormwater drainage and transport are provided in a manner which is economically efficient;
- Housing delivery goals in respect of its area of jurisdiction are set;
- Land for housing development is identified and designated;
- A public environment conducive to housing development which is financial and socially viable is created and maintained;
- Bulk engineering services are provided; and
- Land use and development are planned for and management.

4.1.3 National Land Transport Act, Act 5 of 2009

Section 31 of the National Transport Act requires that land transport planning must be integrated with the land development and land use planning processes. The integrated transport plans required by this Act are designed to provide structure to the function of municipal planning mentioned in Part B of Schedule 4 of the Constitution and must be accommodated in and from an essential part of integrated development plans.

4.1.4 Water Service Act 108 of 1997

Section 12 and 15 of the Water Services Act requires municipalities that are water service authorities to prepare and adopt a water services development plan for their areas of jurisdiction. This water services development plan must be part of the integrated development plan.

4.1.5 Climate Change Bill, 2018

The Bill places a responsibility on local government (as organ of state entrusted with the powers and duties aimed at the achievement, promotion and protection of a sustainable environment) to coordinate and harmonized plans for functions that effect or are affected by climate change to give effect to the national adaptation and mitigation objectives set out in the bill.

4.1.6 Local Economic Development and Inclusive Economic Development (Integrated Urban Development Framework)

Section 26 of the MSA required the reflecting on the local economic development and attendant strategies to promote economic development in the IDP. Inclusive economic development is a

key lever of the Integrated Urban Development Framework (IUDF). The IUDF directs that municipalities economic development strategy should be a special section of the municipal growth management strategy, and that the medium-term plan towards the strategy should be expressed in the Integrated Development Plan. It outlines the economic development strategy as follows:

"The economic development strategy should be based on distinctive strengths and weaknesses, and recognize certain imperatives, such as the need to decouple growth and resource consumption. It should seek to position the city (in relation to key industries, occupations, markets and investment opportunities) relative to other cities and regions within South Africa and international".

The IUDF goes further to suggest how the municipality should reflect its economic development priorities in the IDP and SDF:

"At a local level, economic developments require available serviced land, essential; physical telecommunication infrastructure, labour, skills, and efficient administration of building and environmental regulations. Combined with a conducive and safe social environment, these from the basic platform for attracting investment and enabling growth. However, municipalities are not responsible for all these things and cannot deliver them alone. Therefore, municipalities need to champion a common economic agenda, working with relevant organizations and stakeholders in order to avoid redundant, incoherent or fruitless efforts and initiatives, and to develop joint action plans. Key development planning documents, such as the IDPs and SDFs should clearly reflect municipalities priorities."

4.2 Guidance

(i) Centralized cross departmental strategic planning, management and monitoring

Municipalities must plan and develop their IDPs on the basis of a strategic long-term vision. The following should form the basis of such a Vision:

- Guidelines that reinforce the need for a transversal approach to strategic planning and subsequent management, monitoring and reporting.
- It must encourage positive transversal engagement as a way of bringing in line officials (re: workshops)
- Long-term asset infrastructure management plan.
- It must be made clear that process planning only happens every 5 years, and that their budget time schedule (MFMA) is annual.
- Encourage completion of the SDBIP before the final IDP submission
- How to link, align and cascade the IDP to all other key strategic documents and processes.

(ii) Common data

Municipalities must ensure that all strategic planning in the municipality should work from the basis of common data. This means working off a common set of evidence and assumptions, covering:

- Demographic;
- Economic;
- Fiscal;
- Environmental;
- Social; and
- Growth trends and projections.

(iii) Integrating sector plans

The strategic outcomes identified and included in the IDP and the long – term strategic visions need to lead sector / line strategies, from which SDBIPs are develop. Sector strategies should explain the strategy that the sector is going to apply towards achieving the strategic outcomes in the IDP and long-term strategic vision.

(iv) IDP and the SDF

The IDP and the SDF must depart from the same long-term strategic vision, and must contribute towards the same strategic outcomes, alongside the long-term infrastructure planned the long-term financial strategy. The SDF must give spatial expression to the growth and development pattern expressed in the long-term strategic vision of a 10-to-20-year time horizon.

Strategic outcomes may change from term to term as political priorities change.

(v) Planning for cross – departmental issues

Planning for cross-departmental issues (such as: climate resilience, safer cities, gender mainstreaming) should be centrally coordinated through the same strategic management processes, and using the same common data used for developing long-term strategic plans and IDPs.

Cross departmental plans should therefore be integrated in the IDP in the same way as sector plans, through a focus on achieving one or multiple strategic outcomes.

(vi) Disaster Management

In terms of the Disaster Management Act integrated disaster management planning and integrated development planning processes should be integrated. They must also use the same data as basis.

4.3 Key Role – Players Within the Municipality

4.3.1 The Mayor

The Mayor and the Executive Management must ensure that there is a long-term vision in place, share by all departments in the municipality.

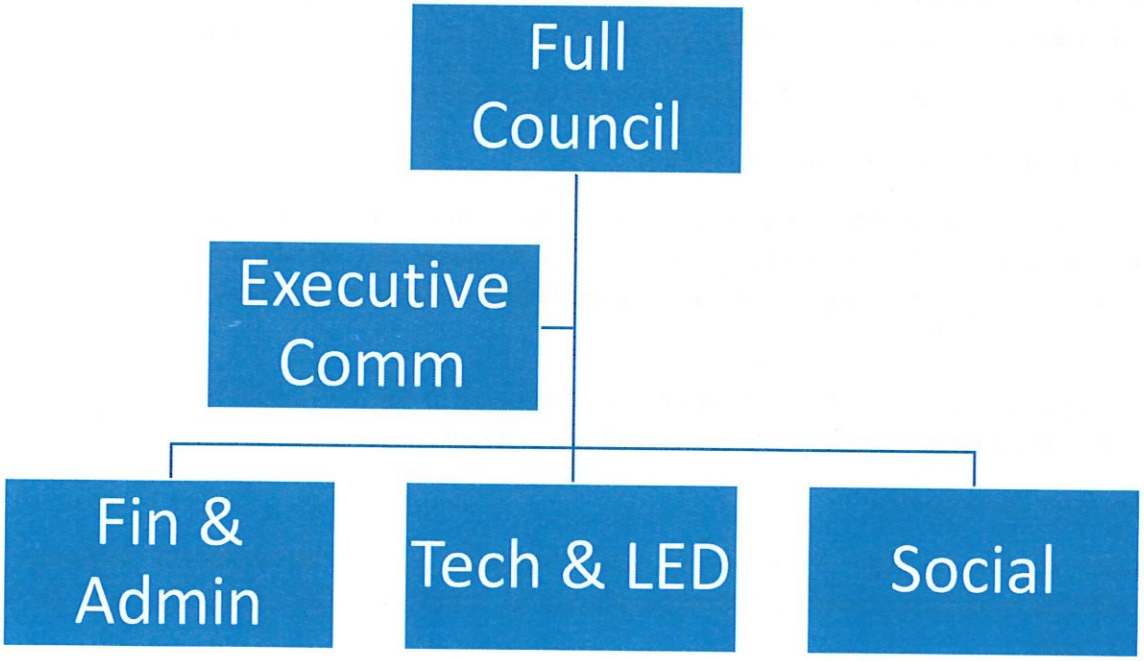
4.3.2 The Mayor, The Municipal Manager, and the Chief Financial Officer

The Mayor, Municipal Manager and the Chief Financial Officer, must make sure that there is an evidence based long term financial strategy in place on which planners can rely as the financial bases of the IDP. The Mayor and the Municipal Manager must make sure that the institutional arrangements for a common set of data are in place and that this data set is in place and is used as the basis for planning by all the departments in the municipality.

4.3.3 The Municipal Manager

The Municipal Manager and line managers must make sure that all role-players in the municipality understand their role in relation the achievement of cross-departmental outcomes and their supporting outputs, to which those role-players contribute.

4.4 GOVERNANCE STRUCTURE



EXECUTIVE COMMITTEE

1. Councilor S C Nero (ANC)
2. Councilor P A Smit (ANC)
3. Councilor M B Hanekom (DA)

FINANCE AND ADMINISTRATION

1. Councilor S C Nero (ANC)
2. Councilor B C Brandt (ANC)
3. Councilor CCCC Coetzee (DA)

TECHNICAL AND LED

1. Councilor P A Smit (ANC)
2. Councilor L Petersen (ANC)
3. Councilor D Markus (NEF)

MPAC (Shared service with Namaqua District Municipality)

Councilor R G C Cloete (ANC)



Back: FLTR. Cllr M J Cloete; Cllr P A Smit; Cllr CCC Coetzee; Cllr D Markus; Cllr L Petersen and Cllr B C Brandt

Front: FLTR: Cllr RGC Cloete; Cllr S C Nero; Cllr M B Hanekom; Cllr CC Kordom and Cllr SS Cloete

Party Representation are as follows:

ANC 6

DA 3

NCM 1

NEF 1

4.5 ADMINISTRATION GOVERNANCE

The Municipal Manager is the accounting Officer of the Municipality. He serves as chief custodian of service delivery and implementation of political priorities.

The Kamiesberg Municipality is structured in three (3) departments namely:

- Finance
- Infrastructure
- Corporate and Local Economic Development

Top Administrative Structure



Municipal Manager Rufus C Beukes

Section 54 appointment

Functions

- Strategic planning
- Municipal Management
- Internal Audit
- Financial management
- Risk Management
- Performance Management
- Public Relations

MANAGER LOCAL ECONOMIC and CORPORATE SERVICES: (VACANT)

Section 56 Appointment

Functions

General Administration

Secretariat

Legal Matters

Human Resources

Labour Relations

Law Enforcement

Capacity Building in the Municipality

By – Laws

Municipal Planning

Trading Regulations

Billboards and the Display of advertisements in Public Places

Control of undertakings that Sell Liquor to the public

Records Management

Municipal Property Management

Town Planning

Libraries

Cleaning Services

Mesenger services

MANAGER: CHIEF FINANCIAL OFFICER

(Mr Frederick Strauss): Section 56 Appointment

Functions

- Budget: Planning, Monitoring and Reporting
- Revenue Management
- Expenditure Management
- Supply Chain Management
- Payroll Management
- Insurance
- Valuations
- Contract Management
- Asset Management

MANAGER: HEAD TECHNICAL SERVICES

Mr. Theunis Cloete: Section 56 Appointment:

FUNCTIONS

Water Service Management

Sewer and sanitation Management

Stormwater Management

Disaster Management

Roads

Waste Management and Cleansing

Building Control

Electrical Service

Fleet Management

Cemetries, Funeral Parlours and Crematoria

Building Regulations & Rescue

CHAPTER 5: ROLES AND RESPONSIBILITIES

One of the long-standing problems confronting municipal development planning process is the weak alignment of municipal priorities, programs and plans with that of national and provincial governments. The Municipal Systems Act envisage municipalities producing IDPs that integrate the planning and implementation of programs and projects initiated by other spheres of government in a manner that promotes integrated development and spatial transformation.

5.1 National and Provincial Sector Participation

Section 154 of the Constitution mandates national and provincial government to support municipalities. The Participation of sector departments in the development and implementation of a municipal IDP is critically important in ensuring that they are aligned to national and provincial priorities and programs and reflect all of government in a municipal space.

5.1.1 Why is Sector Participation in Municipal Integrated Development Planning Important?

Integrated planning requires the participation of all relevant role-players. This contributes to a more effective and efficient use of scares resources. The value that national and provincial sector departments bring to municipal development planning cannot be over emphasized. A significant amount of the financial resources for the implementation of projects lies with sector departments.

While the responsibility lies with a municipality to prepare an IDP, integrated development planning is an intergovernmental system of planning that requires involvement of all spheres of government.

Municipal plans should complement and be complemented by those of national and provincial government to ensure that services are delivered in an integrated manner. This ensures that IDPs become seamless government plans implemented in a municipal space.

5.1.2 Recognition of Different Roles and Responsibilities of Sector Departments

Different national and provincial sector departments can play different roles in their interaction with municipalities. The three main roles played and the type of support that they can provide are as follows:

- ✓ Implementation:

Departments that implement projects directly on the ground.

Provide training or capacity building

Provide technical expertise and or funding to develop sector plans

Provide relevant information on policies and programs

✓ Invest / Finance:

Administer grants or funding for projects to be implemented by municipalities

Training or capacity building

Provide technical expertise and or funding to develop sector plans

Provide relevant information on policies and programs

✓ Support:

Sector departments that support municipalities during the process of integrated development planning.

Training or capacity building

Provide technical expertise and / or funding to develop sector plans

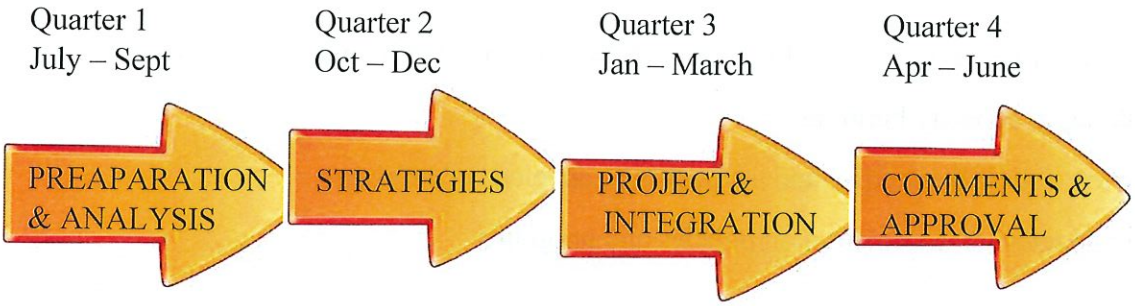
Provide relevant information on policies and programs

5.1.3 Sector Participation Guiding Principles

"One of the problems with IDPs at municipal level is there is no effective system for them to gain the national and provincial support that they require to be meaningful."

(i) Clear national and provincial policy to guide IDPs
(ii) Responsiveness and Alignment to Municipal IDPs
(iii) Consultation and Communication
(iv) Integrated approach to support
(v) Accountability
(vi) Timeous provision of information
(vii) Sectoral and technical expertise
(viii) Rationalization of requirements by national and provincial sectors
(ix) The Systems Act, Section (24) (3) states that if municipalities are required to comply with planning requirements in terms of national or provincial legislation, the responsible organs of state must assist the municipality to meet their IDP time-frame requirements.

5.1.4 Sector Participation in the Development of the 5 – year IDP



Sector departments

Identify gaps on previous adopted IDP Provide sector policy Direction and strategic thrust Identify targets for each municipal areas Share availible info	Highlight strategic prioritiesof the sector and how they align with the priorties of the municipality. Share information on key sector programes/projects	Support the formulation of project proposals. Facilitate the integration of the various programmes elaborated in the various sector plans.	Comment on the draft IDP

Municipalities

Develop District IDP framework and process plans Asses exciting level of development	Develop / review of vision Develop objectives and strategies for each priority area Identify key programs/ projects	Identify project outputs with targets and location Compile cost and budgets estimates and source of finance Ensure alignment of municipal priorities with national and provincial sector departments.	Incorporation of public /stakeholder comments Adoption of IDP by municipal council by 30th June Submit to MEC of Local Government.
Status quo report For each municipal Area	Vision, Mission and Strategic objectives	List of projects Draft IDP	Comments on draft IDP

5.1.5 Sector Participation in the Annual Review of IDP's

In the annual review process, this interaction is far simpler and is focused mainly on providing project information and budgets for the financial year.

5.1.6 Intergovernmental Platforms and Structures

There are a number of intergovernmental forums which should be use to ensure integration and alignment between and within spheres of government. Both the Premiers and District Intergovernmental Forums can be use as platforms where IDP priorities and major projects are discussed and debated in order to ensure a coherent and integrated approach.

(i) At a provincial level, the Premiers Intergovernmental Forum (or the Premiers Coordinating Forum) are established in terms of S16 of the IGRFA.

(ii) District Intergovernmental forums aim to ensure alignment between District plans and those of the Local Municipalities, as well as alignment between the local municipalities.

5.1.7 Provincial Monitoring of IDP's

Provincial MECs of Local Government are required to monitor the process undertaken by municipalities in developing their IDPs (S31) and can provide assistance to municipalities in their development. After receiving approved IDPs from municipalities, MECs must evaluate them.

5.2 Traditional Authorities

Traditional authorities fulfill a variety of functions in rural society in particular. However, there is no formal traditional structure within our municipal area.

5.3 Mining companies

The mining industry plays a critical role in the social and economic development of the country. Through the implementation of the SLPs as required through the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act, mining companies have a legal obligation to develop and uplift poor communities in areas where they operate. In this regard, the SLPs should focus on addressing the key challenges in the municipal area and align to the overall municipal development strategy as identified in the IDP rather than focus on individual projects. The SLP provides mining companies with a tool to make a significant contribution towards the implementation of a municipal IDP.

Mining companies should participate in the IDP Representative forum in particular to understand the long-term development vision of the municipality and then design 5-year programs to contribute towards that vision.

According to the SLP guidelines, mining companies must consult and co – operate in the formulation and review of the IDPs of the mine communities and they must consult with other economic development frameworks at Provincial and National level.

5.3.1 SLP Development Process

The municipal IDP process is the key planning mechanism which provides an overarching framework that guides all stakeholders (including mining companies) on hoe to provide services and infrastructure meant to promote social and economic development in the municipality.

ACTIVITY	DESCRIPTION	RESPONSIBILITY
Stakeholder engagement in the development / review of the IDP	The IDP is one of the source documents for the SLP, in terms of the SLP Guidelines. Mining companies are expected to participate in the development/review of the IDP as part of the broader stakeholder engagement process by the municipality. The participating of mining companies in the IDP representative forums in particular will assists in improving socio – economic conditions across the hole municipality	Municipality and Mining Companies
Public Participation	Mining companies are also expected to consult and cooperate with surrounding communities. This includes consultation with traditional authorities and other community structures and might differ from one municipality to the other.	Municipality and Mining Companies
Prioritization and endorsement of the draft SLP by Municipalities	Once mining companies have consulted relevant planning documents (IDP) and local communities, communication with the municipality on the content of the draft SLP is critical. Municipalities needs to make inputs as to the prioritization of the needs.	Municipal Council
Submission of the SLP to DMR	The SLP guidelines is clear that SLP is to be submitted to DMR Regional Manager, who may refer it back to the applicant with proposals for amendments where necessary. Accordingly, this is the last authority to sing-off on the document.	DMR
Reporting on and Monitoring implementation of the SLP.	Mining companies are required to submit to the Director General of DMR an annual report detailing the extent of compliance with the SLP. It also states that the DMR may request progress report as and when required.	DMR Mining Companies. Municipalities

CHAPTER 6: RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN THE IDP AND ONE PLAN

6.1 What is the One Plan?

It is an Intergovernmental Plan setting out a long – term strategic framework to guide investment and delivery in relation to a specific district or metropolitan space.

It is a collaboratively produced by all three spheres of government ("Co – Created") informed by Existing Plans of all three spheres of government.

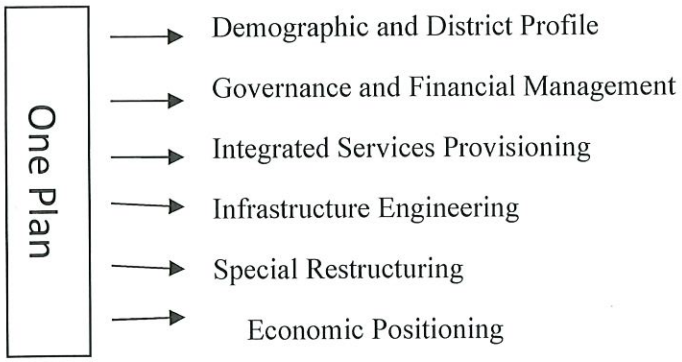
It confirms what is in Existing Plans, refines as necessary and identifies key strategic gaps/issues. It expresses IG agreement, alignment and commitments and is therefore not a detailed development plan.

Adopted collectively by all three spheres of government and stakeholders as an IGR and Social Compact:

Shared understanding of the space

Agreement on priorities

Common vision and measurable outcomes Targets and Commitments



6.2 Relationship between the IDP and One Plan

ONE PLAN (LONG TERM 30 – YEARS)	IDP (MEDIUM TERM – 5 YEARS)
Long term vision of the district area of impact and common understanding of goals and objectives amongst stakeholders in the district area.	Determine how the long – term vision, goals and objectives contributes towards addressing challenges at a local level by directing actions and interventions towards the vision.
Long term vision expressed in policy and long range plans across all spheres of government ,i.e NDP, PGDS, NSDF, PSDF, DSDF, etc.	Implementation of short to medium term service delivery programmes and projects informed by the MTSF, municipal SDF's, sectoral / master plans and long term financial strategies.
Determines government – wide key development strategies and priorities to be addressed.	Address municipal strategies, Council development priorities / objectives and community needs.
Conceptualisation of the desired future and results (outcomes and impact) to be achieved by the district area in the long term.	Plans implemented by municipalities and departments respond directly to the desired outcomes and impacts.
Spatially referenced plans and budgets at district and metro level with emphasis on long – term catalytic programmes and interventions to unlock development potential.	Focus on implementation of immediate service delivery interventions and priority projects in the One Plan.

CHAPTER 7: DEVELOPMENT STRATEGIES

7.1 Overview

7.2 Vision

The Establishment of a Climate Change Orientated and Economically Viable Lifestyle Through Sustainable Growth.

7.3 Mission

To Provide Affordable Quality Services, Alleviate Poverty, and Facilitate Social and Local Economic Development through Comprehensive Rural Development of the Kamiesberg Municipality.

7.4 Value Statement

Kamiesberg Municipality embraces the notion of Developmental Local Government.

In order to fulfil this believe, we subscribe to the following values:

- Integrity and Transparency
- Equity and Dignity
- Service Excellence
- Morality and Honesty
- Commitment and Respect
- Compassion and Professionalism
- Conservation, Climate Change Response and responsible Development

7.5 KPA 1: Service Delivery

STRATEGIC OBJECTIVE

To provide and maintain superior decentralized consumer services (Water, sanitation, roads, storm water, waste management and electricity)

INTENDED OUTCOME

Water infrastructure has been improved in villages such as: Lepelfontein, Kheis, Rooifontein, Paulshoek, Kamieskroon and Garies

Electricity supply in all towns.

Kamiesberg Municipality has a total number of 16 water schemes under its area of jurisdiction and applies innovative technologies at these schemes which range from osmosis/desalination, boreholes and surface water schemes. These systems ensure a high quality of drinking water to all residents. Water is supplied to all formal households, businesses; neighbouring farms.

The quality of the drinking water supply in the Kamiesberg Municipal area is tested monthly by the Namaqua District Municipality and the quality is constantly above the national norms.

During the past heavy Drought Season, we were unable to supply water to the major towns within our municipality. We apply for funding from the Department of Water and Sanitation and that bring part time relief for us.

7.5.3 WATER

Kamiesberg Municipality is an accredited Water Service Authority in terms of the National Water Act (Act 36 of 1998) and provides potable water to all towns and settlements under its area of jurisdiction.

7.5.3.1 STATUS OF THE WATER SERVICE DEVELOPMENT PLAN

Our Current Water Service Development Plan has to be reviewed.

The main objective of the plan was to ensure and assist in effective planning and communication by the Water Service Authority and to assist in the effective monitoring and evaluation.

7.5.3.2 NATIONAL TARGET

All households within the Municipal area of jurisdiction received 2 kl of water free in terms of the Municipalities Indigent Policy.

Kamiesberg Municipality has a total number of 16 water schemes under its area of jurisdiction and applies innovative technologies at these schemes which range from osmosis / desalination, boreholes and surface water schemes. These systems ensure a high quality of drinking water to all residents. Water is supply to all formal and informal households, businesses and neighbouring farms.

The quality of the drinking water supply in the Kamiesberg Municipal area is tested monthly by the Namaqua District Municipality and the quality is constantly above the national norms.

To give effect to the strategic objective of Kamiesberg Municipality to provide infrastructure for basic services and ensuring a safe and healthy environment, Council has made considerable investment in its infrastructure development programme. That is why good sanitation services exist in the municipal area where the majority of the residential areas have waterborne sanitation. However, some areas still rely on septic tanks and ventilated pit latrines, notably the smaller towns around Garies. The servicing of septic tanks becomes increasingly demanding during the peak holiday season and require more frequent emptying. The municipality does not have adequate capacity and resources available to cope with such demand. More than 39 % of households had access to flush toilets, flush septic tanks or chemical toilets in 2011. This figure can certainly improve to eradicate the backlogs and provide equal access to basic sanitation services to all households in the Kamiesberg if more funding can be secured from national & provincial government in this regard

7.5 WATER and SANITATION RELIABLE SERVICE DELIVERY IMPLEMENTION PLAN

The aim of this section is to provide a comprehensive implementation plan to achieve reliable water services for the Water service Authority (WSA) within a period of five (5) years. The focus is on reliable and sustainable service delivery.

7.6.1 Water Service Levels

7.6.1.1 Definition of Reliability Service

An un – interrupted supply for 90% of the time through a fully functional infrastructure system which is Operated and Maintained to set standards supported by an effective Governance institution that provides an acceptable quality of water supply that is based on sustainable water security principles.

7.6.1.2 Reliable Water Supply is Subject to Many Factors including the Following:

- **Adequate Water Resources** and associated storage to supply water at the required level of assurance across seasons and climate variation.

- **Adequately sized, functional water Infrastructure** to distribute water from sources to users and manage sanitation and wastewater for sustained human and environment health.
- **Water and Waste Water Treatment** to comply with user specific water quality requirements.
- **Continuous and Efficient Operation and Management** of water supply processes from source – to – tap – to – source by the responsible institutions with required skills, capacity and accountability.
- **Responsible Water Uses** by households, business, and industries in compliance with water use payments, water conservation, water demand management, and wastewater regulations.
- **Infrastructure Asset Management** to maintain functional and efficient water services infrastructure, plan for future upgrade needs and scheduled renewal of aged infrastructure.
- **Financial Management** (budgeting, financing, revenue collection & expenditure accounting) to ensure that there is adequate funding for efficient and reliable water service delivery.
- **Disaster and Risk Management** to mitigate the impacts of unexpected water – related risk.
- **Good Governance** (leadership, planning, regulations organizing and control)
- **Political Will, Guidance and Support** (centrality of water; outcome and targets)

7.6.1.3 Key Challenges are:

- **Limited Water** resources and climate change affecting water security
- **Access to infrastructure** in rural areas and informal settlements
- **Aged infrastructure** and backlogs in maintenance and refurbishment
- **Water losses** due to poor infrastructure maintenance
- **Revenue collection** and funding not meeting requirements for sustainable services

7.6.2 The Urban Rural Split

The Urban / Rural split is detailed below and confirms the Urban nature of this Warter Service Authority.

Urban / Rural	Settlement Type	Settlement Name	No of Households	No of People
Rural	Rural – Small Village = 5000	Kamassies Nc 1	69	227
Rural	Rural – Small Village = 5000	Kamassies Nc 1	36	103
Rural	Rural – Small Village = 5000	Kamieskroon	263	788
Rural	Rural – Small Village = 5000	Kharkams	378	1239
Rural	Rural – Small Village = 5000	Kheis	162	519
Rural	Rural – Small Village = 5000	Klipfontein	187	574
Rural	Rural – Small Village = 5000	Leliefontein	123	383
Rural	Rural – Small Village = 5000	Lepelsfontein	134	400
Rural	Rural – Small Village = 5000	Nourivier	153	451

Rural	Rural – Small Village = 5000	Paulshoek	124	366
Rural	Rural – Small Village = 5000	Rooifontein	127	298
Rural	Rural – Small Village = 5000	Sewendelaan	18	39
Rural	Rural – Small Village = 5000	Soebatsfontein	90	269
Rural	Rural – Small Village = 5000	Spoegrivier	176	525
Rural	Rural – Small Village = 5000	Tweerivier	67	160
Urban	Urban - Formal Town	Garies	194	624
Urban	Urban – Formal Town	Hondeklipbaai	186	595
Urban	Urban – Formal Town	Mooiuitsig	286	920
Urban	Urban – Formal Town	Vlaktes Vlei	105	338
Urban	Working Town and Service Cen	Koingnaas Nc 1	136	437
Urban	Working Town and service Cen	Koingnaas Nc 2	16	48

7.6.2 Infrastructure

7.6.2.1 Water Infrastructure Schemes

Water Scheme Number	Water Scheme Name	Total Settlements	Total Households	Total Population	Households with Reliable Services	Households without reliable resources	Households NOT having Reliable Service due to: Functionality (O&M and Management)
S03F50F001	Garies	3	585	1882	585	-	-
S03F40F001	Hondeklipbaai	1	186	595	97	89	-
S03F30A004	Kamassies	2	105	330	105	-	-
S03F30C002	Kamieskroon	1	263	788	158	105	-
S03F40E002	Kharkams	1	378	1239	284	94	-
S03F50E001	Kheis	1	162	519	57	105	105
S03F40G001	Klipfontein	1	187	574	107	80	-
S03F40A001	Koiingnaas	2	152	485	92	60	58
SO3F30A001	Leliefontein	1	123	383	69	54	54
	Lepelsfontein	1	134	400	69	65	65
S03F30A005	Nourivier	1	153	451	73	80	-
S03F50A001	Paulshoek	1	124	366	93	31	31
S03F30A003	Rooifontein	1	127	298	44	83	83
	Soebatsfontein	1	90	269	70	20	20
S03F40E001	Spoegrivier	1	176	525	132	44	-
S03F50E003	Tweerivier	2	85	199	47	38	35

Water Scheme Number	Water Scheme Name	Total Settlements	Total Households	Total Population	Households NOT having Reliable Service due to: Resources	H/H not having reliable services due to: Resources Conservation & Demand Management	H/H not having reliable services due to: Infrastructure Upgrade , Refurbishment
S03F50F001	Garies	3	585	1882	-	146	-
S03F40F001	Hondeklipbaai	1	186	595	89	89	89
S03F30A004	Kamassies	2	105	330	-	-	-
S03F30C002	Kamieskroon	1	263	788	-	171	-
S03F40E002	Kharkams	1	378	1239	-	94	-
S03F50E001	Kheis	1	162	519	-	40	-
S03F40G001	Klipfontein	1	187	574	80	80	80
S03F40A001	Koiingnaas	2	152	485	-	58	58
SO3F30A001	Leliefontein	1	123	383	-	54	-
	Lepelsfontein	1	134	400	30	20	-
S03F30A005	Nourivier	1	153	451	-	-	80
S03F50A001	Paulshoek	1	124	366	-	31	-83
S03F30A003	Rooifontein	1	127	298	83	32	-
	Soebatsfontein	1	90	269	-	20	-
S03F40E001	Spoegrivier	1	176	525	44	44	-
S03F50E003	Tweerivier	2	85	199	-	26	-

Water Scheme Number	Water Scheme Name	Total Settlements	Total Households	Total Population	Households NOT having Reliable Service due to: Infrastructure – New Scheme	Households NOT having Reliable Service due to: Infr Extension	Households NOT having Reliable Service due to: Replace Old
S03F50F001	Garies	3	585	1882	-	-	-
S03F40F001	Hondeklipbaai	1	186	595	-	-	-
S03F30A004	Kamassies	2	105	330	-	-	-
S03F30C002	Kamieskroon	1	263	788	105	-	105
S03F40E002	Kharkams	1	378	1239	94	-	-
S03F50E001	Kheis	1	162	519	-	-	-
S03F40G001	Klipfontein	1	187	574	80	-	-
S03F40A001	Koiingnaas	2	152	485	-	-	60
SO3F30A001	Leliefontein	1	123	383	49	-	49
	Lepelsfontein	1	134	400	-	-	-
S03F30A005	Nourivier	1	153	451	-	-	-
S03F50A001	Paulshoek	1	124	366	-	-	-
S03F30A003	Rooifontein	1	127	298	-	-	-
	Soebatsfontein	1	90	269	-	-	-
S03F40E001	Spoegrivier	1	176	525	-	-	-
S03F50E003	Tweerivier	2	85	199	38	-	38

7.6.2.2 Water Security

A comprehensive groundwater investigation must be undertaken to confirm the sustainable yields and the water quality of the existing production boreholes. The investigation must also determine the remaining groundwater in the villages of Kamiesberg Municipality that can still be further developed and to what extend it will meet the long term water requirements of the municipality.

7.6.2.3. Asset Management

Every Water Service Authority (WSA) should have, by law, have an Asset Management Plan, one in terms of the MFMA (No 56 of 2003). If a WSA does not have an IAMP then the WSA is breaking the Law.

Therefore, the Kamiesberg Municipality have to develop and adopt an Integrated Asset Management Plan, and also;

Update and verify the Asset register to reflect the current status of infrastructure.

7.6.3 Water Resource Needs

The following Actions Should Be Implemented.

Garies:

An immediate analysis of both residential and non – residential water use patterns, and of the water use within the different socio – economic brackets;

Ensuring system efficiencies and that as much water as possible reaches consumers with minimum system losses;

Should the higher water use be due to wastage suppliers and / or consumers, then it is assumed that this wastage will be eliminated, and that benchmark figures can be used for planning and projections.

A comprehensive groundwater investigation must be undertaken to determine the sustainable yields and the water quality of the existing production boreholes and to determine remaining the groundwater potential in and around Garies that can still be further develop and to what extent it will meet the long term water requirements of the town.

7.6.3.1 Blue Drop Compliancy

Improve Blue Drop status and obtain Blue Drop certification

Update / upload compliance data on IRIS on a monthly basis

Prepare a water resource viability and water security plan

Link and classify all systems on IRIS, including borehole systems

Install and calibrate flow meters in order to verify operational capacity of all supply systems

Implement corrective measures in the event of chemical and micro biological failures

Appointment of suitably qualified staff and/or training of existing staff (supervisors, process controllers and maintenance teams) to ensure adequate alignment to set criteria.

Implement a drinking water quality risk management program

Conduct a condition assessment of each plant and water supply system and address findings and shortcomings

Compile budget and expenditure outlining both operational and maintenance cost

Conduct regular inspections of all water infrastructure including reticulation

Audit and update the asset register to reflect the latest available asset data

7.6.3.2 Green Drop Compliancy

Improve Green Drop status and obtain Green Drop certification

Develop / Review Wastewater Risk Abatement Plans

Register process controllers and supervisors

Monitor, record and interpret flow measurements and keep record of the data

Implement process and compliance monitoring

Implement final effluent compliance monitoring

Verify, audit and update WWTW asset register

Implementation and enforcement of bylaws is a requirement

Conduct regular plant audits, condition ad capacity assessments on plants, pump stations and sewer networks

Sludge classification and monitoring plan should be developed and implemented

Garies and Kamieskroon plants are in critical risk positions and requires urgent attention

Gather, compile and upload documentary evidence on IRIS

Implement a compliance monitoring program and upload compliance data on IRIS

Prepare financial figures in terms of budget and expenditure for presentation to audit team

7.6.4 Water Conservation and Demand Management

2.3.3.2 No Drop Status and IWA Water Balance:

2: CURRENT SUPPLY STATUS 2.3. WATER SECURITY

2.3.3 Water Conservation and Demand Management

System Input

Volume (Ml/a)

Revenue Water Non Revenue Water

Part of the Water Conservation and Demand Management (WCDM) assessment, is to prepare a water balance. To understand the functioning of a water supply scheme / system and to ensure a balanced cycle for future sustainability, it is important to calculate the volume of water abstracted/measured/purchased vs the volume of water used. Revenue includes free basic water allocations and Non-Revenue Water includes allwater supplied for which the WSA does not generate an income.

The IWA water balance is shown in the diagram on the right with explanations of each component.

The current system input volumes as indicated in the table above, are per water scheme area. The system

input volumes indicated in the table is information (2020/2021) received from the Department of Water and Sanitation

<table>
<tr><td rowspan="5">System Input Volume
(Total water treated / measured at treatment works, groundwater or water purchased)</td><td rowspan="4">Authorized Consumption
(Billed metered & Billed unmetered, Unbilled metered & Unbilled unmetered)</td><td rowspan="2">Billed Authorized Consumption</td><td>Billed Metered Consumption</td><td rowspan="2">Revenue Water
(includes free basic water)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Billed Unmetered Consumption
(flat rate tariff, free basic water used through unbilled unmetered standpipes/ yard connections)</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">Unbilled Authorized Consumption</td><td>Unbilled Metered Consumptions
(e.g government buildings, parks etc)</td><td rowspan="2">Non – Revenue Water (NRW)
(unbilled metered, Unbilled unmetered, apparent & real losses)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Unbilled Unmetered Consumptions
(firefighting, usage above free basic water for unmetered unbilled standpipes / yard connections)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Total Water Losses

(Apparent and real losses)</td><td>Apparent</td><td>Unauthorized</td><td></td></tr>
</table>

		Losses	Consumption (illegal connections)	
			Metering Inaccuracies	
		Real Losses	Leakage on Transmission and / or Distribution Mains	
			Leakage and Overflows at Utility's Storage Tanks	
			Leakage on Service Connections up to the measurement point	

7.6.5 Sanitation Service Status

Set/Name	HH	Direct Backlog HH	Water borne HH	Flush Toilet HH	Flush to conservancy	Chemical Toilets HH	VIP HH	UDS Toilets	Pit HH	Bucket HH	None HH
Garies	194	0	0	0	0	0	194	0	0	0	0
Hondeklipbaai	186	37	0	0	149	0	0	37	0	0	0
Kamassies nc1	36	0	0	36	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Kamassies nc2	69	0	0	69	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Kamieskroon	263	89	86	0	88	0	0	89	0	0	0
Kharkams	378	178	0	0	189	0	0	189	0	0	0
Kheis	162	162	0	0	0	0	0	162	0	0	0
Klipfontein	187	187	0	0	0	0	0	187	0	0	0
Koingnaas nc1	136	0	0	0	136	0	0	0	0	0	0
Koingnaas nc 2	16	0	0	0	16	0	0	0	0	0	0
Leliefontein	123	0	0	123	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Lepelsfontein	134	134	0	0	0	0	0	134	0	0	0
Mooiuitsig	286	0	0	0	0	0	286	0	0	0	0
Nourivier	153	153	0	0	0	0	0	153	0	0	0
Paulshoek	124	0	0	0	0	0	124	0	0	0	0
Rooifontein	127	127	0	0	0	0	0	127	0	0	0
Sewendelaan	18	0	0	18	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Soebatsfontein	90	0	0	90	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Spoegrivier	176	176	0	0	0	0	0	176	0	0	0
Tweerivier	67	0	0	67	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Vlaktes Vlei	105	0	0	0	0	0	105	0	0	0	0
	3030	**1243**	**86**	**403**	**578**	**0**	**709**	**1254**	**0**	**0**	**0**

	UPGRADING NEEDS (Households)						REFURBISHMENT NEEDS (HH)		
Settlement name	Buckets to none – sewered or on site	None to waterborne	Pit to UDS/ VIP	UDS/ PIT to water borne	Buckets to water borne	None to None sewered or on site	Conservancy tanks to water borne	VIP to water borne	VIP emptying needs
Garies	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Hondeklipbaai	0	0	0	37	0	0	0	0	0
Kamassies nc1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Kamassies nc2	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Kamieskroon	0	0	0	89	0	0	0	0	0
Kharkams	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Kheis	0	0	162	0	0	0	0	0	0
Klipfontein	0	0	187	0	0	0	0	0	0
Koingnaas nc1	0	0	0	0	0	0	136	0	0
Koingnaas nc 2	0	0	0	0	0	0	16	0	0
Leliefontein	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Lepelsfontein	0	0	134	0	0	0	0	0	0
Mooiuitsig	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Nourivier	0	0	153	0	0	0	0	0	0
Paulshoek	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Rooifontein	0	0	127	0	0	0	0	0	0
Sewendelaan	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Soebatsfontein	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Spoegrivier	0	0	176	0	0	0	0	0	0
Tweerivier	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Vlaktes Vlei	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

7.6.6 Governance

Priority	Contributing Factors	Actions to address the Gap	Time Frames	Progress on Action	Challenges	Actions to address the challenges	Funded/ Not Funded / No Funding Required	Is the action part of the WSDP? If not: State reasons	WSA Official Responsible
Water Conservation & Water Demand	Ageing Infrastructure; no telemetry	Submit WCWDM related 75egular			Funding; community awarenes	Conduct awarenes s 75egular	Limited funding availabl e	Yes	Technical Manager/ Municipal Manager

Management (WC/WDM) 60%		76 plan to facilitate AC pipe replacement			s ito water losses	76 with community: Additional sources of funding is required			
	Water balancing and accounting not up to date	Introduce and maintain water balance performance monitoring. Submit up to date water balances to the regulator	Monthly				No funding required	Yes	Technical Manager / Municipal Manager
		Introduce necessary processes and procedure for improved customer meter management	Ongoing						

7.6.7 O & M of Water and Sewerage Infrastructure

The following concept projects have been identified based on the assessment in the previous sections

Carry out scheduled maintenance in order to prevent expensive maintenance repairs and unnecessary service breaks

Remove illegal connections

Increase the capacity of the technical support team (i.e. engineering services) in the water and sanitation supply schemes

Develop and implement Water services infrastructure maintenance and rehabilitation programme

Appoint appropriately qualified and adequate staff to perform O&M on all water and sanitation infrastructure

Develop and Implement a Leak detection and Repair Programme

Develop and implement a comprehensive O&M Plan to quantify the full resource (tools, equipment, staff and funds)

Carry out scheduled maintenance

7.6.7.1 Refurbishment of Water and Sewerage Infrastructure

The following concept projects have been identified based on the assessment in the previous sections

Kamieskroon water supply system:

Borehole refurbishment and drilling of additional boreholes, storage , pipeline replacement is required

Kheis water supply system:

Borehole refurbishment and drilling of additional boreholes, storage , pipeline replacement is required

Kamassies

Borehole refurbishment and drilling of additional boreholes, storage , pipeline replacement is required

Garies

5 Boreholes have reached the end of their lifespan, and should be assessed to determine if refurbishment or replacement is required

Hondeklipbaai

Borehole refurbishment and drilling of additional boreholes, storage , pipeline replacement is required

Soebatsfontain

Borehole refurbishment and drilling of additional boreholes, storage , pipeline replacement is required

Paulshoek

1 Reservoir have reached the end of it's lifespan and should be assessed to determine if refurbishment or replacement is required

The dysfunctional reservoir should be assessed to determine if refurbishment or replacement is required

Borehole refurbishment and drilling of additional boreholes, storage , pipeline replacement is required

Spoegrivier

1 Borehole have reached the end of it's lifespan and should be assessed to determine if refurbishment or replacement is required

Leliefontein

Borehole refurbishment and drilling of additional boreholes, storage , pipeline replacement is required

Kamieskrooon

1 Borehole is dysfunctional and needs to be assessed to determine whether refurbishment or replacement is required

7 Boreholes have reached the end of their lifespan and should be assessed to determine if refurbishment or replacement is required

Borehole refurbishment and drilling of additional boreholes, storage , pipeline replacement

Kheis

1 Borehole have reached the end of it's lifespan and should be assessed to determine if refurbishment or replacement is required

1 Reservoir have reached the end of it's lifespan and should be assessed to determine if refurbishment or replacement is required

Borehole refurbishment and drilling of additional boreholes, storage , pipeline replacement is required

Klipfontein

Borehole refurbishment and drilling of additional boreholes, storage , pipeline replacement is required

Lepelsfontein

1 Reservoir have reached the end of it's lifespan and should be assessed to determine if refurbishment or replacement is required

1 Borehole have reached the end of it's lifespan and should be assessed to determine if refurbishment or replacement is required

The evaporation pond and steel tank is deteriorating very fast and urgent refurbishment or replacement is required

Borehole refurbishment and drilling of additional boreholes, storage, pipeline replacement is required

Nourivier

Two Reservoir have reached the end of it's lifespan and should be assessed to determined if refurbishment or replacement is required.

The 2 dysfunctional reservoirs need to be assessed to determined if refurbishment or replacement is required.

One Borehole have reached the end of its lifespan and should be assessed to determined if refurbishment or replacement is required.

Borehole refurbishment and drilling of additional boreholes, storage, pipeline replacement is required.

Rooifontein.

Borehole refurbishment and drilling of additional boreholes, storage, pipeline replacement is required.

Tweerivier

The pipeline to Kharkams (10 km Asbestos and 15 km Galvanised Steel needs to be replace.

Koiingnaas

The AC pipes in the scheme that have reached the end of their lifespan requires replacement.

7.6.8. Project Needs Identification

Extension of the Namakwa Regional Water Scheme to Kamiesberg LM [2];
A New Regional Water Scheme with a Desalination Plant at Hondeklip Bay [2];
A New Regional Water Scheme with a Desalination Plant at Volwater Bay

Kamieskrooon
Borehole refurbishment and drilling of additional boreholes, storage , pipeline replacement

Karkhams
Equipping of borehole and construction of pump main line and development of a desalination plant is required

Kheis
Borehole refurbishment and drilling of additional boreholes, storage , pipeline replacement is required

Klipfontein
Borehole refurbishment and drilling of additional boreholes, storage, pipeline replacement is required

Lepelsfontein
The current resource will be inadequate in 5 years time and resource augmentation is required
Borehole refurbishment and drilling of additional boreholes, storage , pipeline replacement is required

Nourivier
Borehole refurbishment and drilling of additional boreholes, storage , pipeline replacement is required

Rooifontein
Borehole refurbishment and drilling of additional boreholes, storage , pipeline replacement is required
Tweerivier
Borehole refurbishment and drilling of additional boreholes, storage , pipeline replacement is required
Koiingnaas
Borehole refurbishment and drilling of additional boreholes, storage , pipeline replacement is required
Garies
An immediate analysis of both residential and non-residential water use patterns, and of the water use within the different socio-economic brackets;
Ensuring system efficiencies and that as much water as possible reaches consumers with minimum system losses; and
Should the high water use be due to wastage by suppliers and/or consumers, then it is assumed that this wastage will be eliminated, and that benchmark figures can be used for
planning and projections
A preliminary analysis to assess the potential for loss reduction through the implementation of WC/WDM indicates that there is scope to reduce the total demand by reducing nonrevenue
water and water losses. It is therefore important that the WSA should develop and implement WC/WDM measures in order to reduce losses and use the available water
resources optimally and reduce the future deficit
A comprehensive groundwater investigation must be undertaken to determine the sustainable yields and the water quality of the existing production boreholes and the extent to
which the groundwater resource can further be developed to meet the long term water requirements of Leliefontein. The treatment processes required to make the groundwater
suitable for long term human consumption and the costs for implementing and operating these processes should also form part of the investigation
A comprehensive groundwater investigation must be undertaken to determine the sustainable yields and the water quality of the existing production boreholes and the extent to
which the groundwater resource can further be developed to meet the long term water requirements of Leliefontein. The treatment processes required to make the groundwater
suitable for long term human consumption and the costs for implementing and operating these processes should also form part of the investigation
A comprehensive groundwater investigation must be undertaken to confirm the sustainable yields and the water quality of the existing production boreholes. The investigation
must also determine the remaining groundwater potential in and around Kamieskroon that can still be further developed and to what extent it will meet the long term water
requirements of the town
If additional resources are required after all the WC/WDM measures have been fully implemented and the identified feasible ground water resources are developed then a
feasibility study should be undertaken to further investigate the following options:

7.6.8.1Blue Drop Compliancy

Improve Blue Drop status and obtain Blue Drop certification

Update / upload compliance data on IRIS on a monthly basis

Prepare a water resource viability and water security plan

Link and classify all systems on IRIS, including borehole systems

Install and calibrate flow meters in order to verify operational capacity of all supply systems

Implement corrective measures in the event of chemical and micro biological failures

Appointment of suitably qualified staff and/or training of existing staff (supervisors, process controllers and maintenance teams) to ensure adequate alignment to set criteria.

Implement a drinking water quality risk management program

Conduct a condition assessment of each plant and water supply system and address findings and shortcomings

Compile budget and expenditure outlining both operational and maintenance cost

Conduct regular inspections of all water infrastructure including reticulation

Audit and update the asset register to reflect the latest available asset data

7.6.8.2Green Drop Compliancy

Improve Green Drop status and obtain Green Drop certification

Develop / Review Wastewater Risk Abatement Plans

Register process controllers and supervisors

Monitor, record and interpret flow measurements and keep record of the data

Implement process and compliance monitoring

Implement final effluent compliance monitoring

Verify, audit and update WWTW asset register

Implementation and enforcement of bylaws is a requirement

Conduct 81egular plant audits, condition ad capacity assessments on plants, pump stations and sewer networks

Sludge classification and monitoring plan should be developed and implemented

Garies and Kamieskroon plants are in critical risk positions and requires urgent attention

Gather, compile and upload documentary evidence on IRIS

Implement a compliance monitoring program and upload compliance data on IRIS

Prepare financial figures in terms of budget and expenditure for presentation to audit team.

7.7 ELECTRICITY AND ENERGY

Electricity reticulation means bulk supply of electricity, which includes for the purposes of such supply, the transmission, distribution and, where applicable, the generation of electricity, and also the regulation, control and maintenance of the electricity reticulation network, tariff policies, monitoring of the operation of the facilities for adherence to standards and registration requirements, and any other matter pertaining to the provision of electricity in the municipal areas. The Kamiesberg Municipality adopted a free basic service policy by which 50 kilowatts of electricity is given free to all indigents.

7.7.1 PROVISSION OF ENERGY

Kamiesberg Municipality, as the distributor, supplies consumers within the licensed area of supply. The distribution of electricity within the municipal area is governed further by distribution licenses with NERSA, which regulate the areas to which the municipality may distribute electricity. According to the license the distribution area includes: Rooifontein, Garies, Kamasies, Nourivier, Kamieskroon, Paulshoek, Klipfontein, Spoegrivier, Hondeklipbaai, Soebatsfontein, Kheis and Lepelsfontein and excludes Kharkams, Tweerivier and Leliefontein.

7.7.2 SOLAR POWER POTENTIAL

A small 6.1 KW solar energy system will provide 8.72 kw hours of energy per annum, saving 6.6 tons of carbon from going into the atmosphere and would be the equivalent of planting 4.4 acres of trees.

The only disadvantage is that the solar power system is expensive (around R 22 per watt) and would need some form of battery storage to ensure energy during heavy winter periods. Solar water heaters can save up to 4.5 kwh per household per day; which workout much cheaper than a geyser in the long run. According to the Energy Outlook SA Report (2002:XV) the Northern Cape has some of the world's best conditions for solar power.

WIND POWER POTENTIAL

Wind power is one of the cleanest energy resources of electrical energy, but it also requires a place to store its energy (i.e in batteries) and it usually needs a constant wind that comes from one direction at a time. Before wind farms can be constructed the following issues need to resolve:

- Site location
- Legal rights – up to 22.2 km distance from a country's shore belongs to the national authorities and coastal zoning

According to the Energy Outlook SA Report (2002:XV) "much of South Africa's coastal region is suitable for wind power".

The following electricity sector projects are outlined in other Kamiesberg LM policies:

- A natural gas plant, South of Hondeklipbaai: A full EIA has already been undertaken for this project. Economic impacts are high, with a large number of spin – off projects , particularly in the manufacturing of equipment (drills, pipelines, safety equipments etc.)
- Hondeklipbaai Oil and Gas Refinery – the use of Hondeklipbaai as a port of entry and processing for any gas and oil brought to shore.
- Kamiesberg Local Municipality Solar power feasibility study
- Kamiesberg Local Municipality Wind power feasibility study

INTEGRATED WASTE MANAGEMENT PLAN (IWMP)

- **Defining the Geographical Area**

Kamiesberg Local Municipality (KLM) is located within the Namaqua District Municipality (NDM) in the western part of the Northern Cape, South Africa. The town of Garies is the administrative centre of the KLM. Garies and Kamieskroon are relatively well developed, but most of the other small towns in the district are under-developed and in need of further investment. The population of Kamiesberg LM is 15 130, (census 2022), which are predominantly Afrikaans speaking and Coloured. Most of the population live in small towns separated by large distances. No tertiary education institutions exist in Kamiesberg, and the levels of education is low. There are high levels of unemployment within the municipality, and consequently a large number of indigent households who cannot pay for the services. A climate change vulnerable assessment performed by the district in 2017 determined that the district is highly vulnerable to climate change and is already experiencing the effects of a drying trend.

Agriculture and mining are the two main economic sectors, although there is a growing tourism industry, which focuses on the seasonal flower displays that are a feature of the area. Agriculture predominantly involves sheep and goat farming, as well as irrigated agriculture along the Orange River. Mining is the principal economic driver and main source of employment in the municipality and includes off-shore diamond dredging, open cast and alluvial mining.

- **Waste Stream Analysis**

Waste Streams are defined as follows of specific waste, from its source through to recovery, recycling or disposal. Currently most of the waste generated in Kamiesberg Municipality end up at the disposal/landfill sites as no or few recycling or initiatives are taking place.

(Theres only one initiative (BKR) currently operating in the area, which needs our fully support)

Waste Recycling, Treatment and Disposal.

The municipality's waste disposal operations take place at 16 dumpsites, which are located in each town serviced by the municipality. There are no materials recovery facilities, waste transfer stations or waste treatment facilities in the municipality, all landfill sites do not licensing, they are currently being operating on permits. There are no statistics available in for the quantities of waste disposed of at the existing dump site as there is no control of waste entering the dumping sites. There is no strategy in place for any hazardous domestic waste and it is assumed that these products find their way to the landfill. Medical waste is managed by a private contractor appointed by the province.

- **Status Quo of Waste Treatment Facilities**

There are no materials recovery facilities, waste transfer stations or waste treatment facilities in the municipality. There is no statistics available in for the quantities of waste disposed of at the existing dump site as there is no control of waste entering the dumping site. There is no strategy in place for the safe disposal of any hazardous domestic waste and it is assumed that these products find their way to the landfill. Medical waste is managed by a private contractor appointed by the province.

- **Status Quo of Waste Recyclers**

There is no municipal waste reduction or recycling programmes, although a certain amount of informal recycling, accomplished by waste pickers on the landfill sites, take place. Currently, the only local buyers for recyclables are scrap metal merchants in Springbok. One of the ongoing recycling initiatives in place in the Kamiesberg Municipality namely, The Mzansi Africa recycling Project, which is a short -term recycling project that focuses on recycling plastic and other recyclable materials, with job creation as one of the by-products of the initiatives.

- **Status Quo of Other Types of Facilities**

There are currently no systems in place to measure the quantities and types of waste generated within the local municipality. Given the arid nature of the environment, and the low levels of income of its inhabitants it can be expected that there are likely to be far lower volumes of organic and garden waste per household.

7.9 KPA 2: Local Economic Development

STRATEGIC OBJECTIVE

To create employment, investment and business development opportunities we will:

1. Regular update our socio – economic and demographic information.
2. Capacitate local LED staff
3. In – depth analysis of the real development opportunities in key economic sectors, e.g tourism, agriculture
4. Focus explicitly on opportunities for SMME development in all sectors of the economy.

INTENDED OUTCOME

Local Economic Development must incorporate recent development changes in the local economy as well as the alignment with Provincial and National initiatives and to develop implementation plans. In implementing the above objectives we will broaden our economy base and introduce new activities in the area, exploit latent resources and established SMME's.

7.10 KPA 3: Financial Viability

7.10.1 STRATEGIC OBJECTIVE

To ensure a municipality that is:

a) Committed to an innovative approach, prudent investment of public funds, good governance, financial viability and optimal institutional transformation that accommodates diversity in service delivery.

7.10.2 INTENDED OUTCOME

Financial viability measured in terms of the municipalities ability to meet its service debt obligations as at 30th June.

Financial viability measured in terms of the municipalities outstanding service debtors as at 30th June.

Financial viability measured in terms of the municipalities available cash to cover fixed operating expenditure as at 30th June.

7.11 KPA 4: Municipal Transformation

7.11.1 Workplace Skills Plan and Annual Training Report

Workplace Skills Plan and Annual Training Report	
Reference Number	L230701809-25
ATR/WSP Period	2024/2025
Workplace skills Plan Report Period	01 May 2023 – 30 April 2024
Annual Training Report Period	01 May 2023 – 30 April 2024
Closing Date	30 April 2024
Submitted	Yes
Date Submitted	30 April 2024 08 .05

7.9.2 Administrative Details as at 2024

Organisation Details	
Nama of Municipality / Entity	Kamiesberg Local
Skills Development Levy (SDL) No	L230701809
Demarcation Code	NC064
Municipal Type	Local Municipality
Sic Code	91202
Contact Person	Gertrude Miggel
Telephone	027 6528000
Fax	027 6528001
Physical Address	22 Mainroad Garies Garies 8220
Postal Address	Private Bag X200 Garies Garies 8220
Province	Northern Cape

Work Place Skills Plan are attached as per "Annexure "C"

7.11.2 Human Resource Management Plan / Strategy

The objectives of this policy is primarily to ensure recruitments of suitable qualified personnel into higher positions at the Municipality in an equitable and consistent manner in order to eliminate unfair discrimination and to ensure equitable groups in the workplace according to the demographics of the area.

PROMOTIONS

1. **Advertising**

(a) Once a position becomes vacant and resolved by the Council that it is necessary to fill it, the post must be advertised internally first.
(b) An advert must reflect specific job requirements and a brief job profile attached to the post.
(c) All applications should be made on the application form approved by the Council.
(d) A Council Resolution number for filling of a particular post must be used as a reference number when the post is advertised internally.

2. **Processing of application forms received:**

(a) A personnel officer must receive and acknowledge the receipt of the forms on a proforma letter wherein it should be stated that if any applicant has not received any correspondence after three weeks of the receipt of the acknowledgement letter should take the application as unsuccessful.
(b) The day after the closing date the forms must be examined by the Personnel officer who must ascertain which applicants meet the minimum requirements for the post and which do not.
(c) Only employees who meet the minimum requirements can be selected for short listing, especially those from the designated groups in terms of the Employment Equity Act, 55 of 1998.
(d) The Personnel officer must thereafter prepare a schedule for short listing process indicating details like Name, address, Gender, Race, Qualifications, Experience and any other important information and the schedule must be submitted to the Municipal Manager or relevant Manager.
(e) Late applications will not be considered.

3. Selection and interviewing panel:

The Municipal Manager in consultation with the Executive Mayor, selected Councilors (for that purpose) labour representatives and one personnel

(a) representative to constitute a selection and interviewing panel for appointment of Departments and next level Managers (Level 1-3).
(b) The selection and interviewing panel for junior posts will be constituted by the relevant Head of Department, three Councilors and personnel representatives. The Municipal Manager may sit on the panel as well.

2. Short listing

(a) The selection and interviewing panel should agree on the criteria on which the pre-selection of suitably qualified candidates for interviews to be based on.
(b) After the pre-selection the panel should shortlist candidates and ensures that a suitable venue and date for interviews is communicated to them.

3. Elimination list

(a) All the applicants who are not short-listed will be put to elimination list and reasons for elimination of each applicant must be recorded.

4. Interviews:

(a) All members of the panel should be given full details of the candidate being interviewed including his application forms, CV and qualifications.
(b) The panel should agree on a fair and reasonable interviewing process including the parameters within to ask question – i.e. they can use pre-planned questions to every candidate.
(c) The panel should ensure that all candidate are accorded an equal opportunity and avoid questions which are racist, sexist or infringe the candidate's rights.
(d) The Chairperson should commence by asking a technical question relevant to the job in order to ascertain the level of competence and knowledge of the job.
(e) Other members may ask questions and it is advisable for the personnel representative to ascertain the interpersonal relation in his/her questioning.
(f) Each member of the panel, except for the observes (personnel and labour representative), should give scores according to the specified elements in the score sheet and select three strong candidates and write a motivation for each.
(g) The panel should on the basis of the motivation cited above, submit a complete report including its recommendation to the Council for final approval.
(h) If the first candidate declines, number two must be considered and also if number two declines, number three must be considered but if number three declines it must be re-advertised.

APPOINTMENT

(1)Once the Council confirms the appointment of a candidate(s) a letter of appointment detailing conditions of service in terms of the Basic Conditions of Employment Act is addressed to the candidate(s).

(2)If the candidate has accepted the post it is important that the necessary orientation and induction course should be arranged for him/her.

Employees on maximum salary notch:

(1) Employees who have reached maximum salary notch on his/her salary scale should be moved to one salary notch ahead of his/her salary scale. Or Employees can receive a long service bonus. In order for employees to qualify they should be on one salary for 5 years or more. Note that employees on salary level 1 to 3 are excluded from his adjustment.

SUCCESSION PLANNING

2. COMMUNICATE POSSIBLE OPPORTUNITIES

8.1 Inform employees of the possible job opportunities over the designated time period 9e.g. next three years).
8.2 Communicate what key competencies are needed for those jobs. That is, what level of demonstrated skills and knowledge is management looking for in potential candidates for these jobs.
8.3 Inform employees of the succession planning process that the organization intends to use. This is done in accordance to the Human Resources Strategy and pertains to plans such as bursary support, mentorship, special projects, limited job-rotation or advanced development programmes.

3. IDENTITY INTERESTED EMPLOYEES

9.1 Give employees the opportunity to indicate interest in possible job openings and willingness to participate in succession planning activities.
9.2 Clarify that participation in succession planning is not a guarantee of advancement. However, participation could help one's chances.

4. ASSESS COMPETENCY READINESS

10.1 Assesses individuals readiness to assume possible job openings for which they have indicated interest.
10.2 Compare the employee's present competency level to that required of the anticipated opening. Identify competencies that need development to help ready the employee for that job occupation.
10.3 It is advisable to use an assessment instrument that actively engages the employee as well as the superior in determining the employee's competency levels.
10.4 Competency and potential assessments must be done with assessment tools that are culture and gender sensitive and of which the integrity has been establish.

1. PREPARE DEVELOPMENT PLANS

11.1 Together with the employee, prepare an individual development plan that outlines specific activities that the employee engages in to develop needed competencies. Include a timetable with milestone for assessing progress.
11.2 The list of activities and timetable should be reflected in the employee's personal development plan.
11.3 In addition to individual plans, it may make sense to have a group development plan applicable to core competencies for a particular occupation level that all interested employees should participate in.

2. PROVIDE DEVELOPMENT OPPORTUNITIES

12.1 Help the employee follow through with the development plan by setting up training options and providing realistic time to participate in the training activities indicated in the employee's development plan.
12.2 The employee should also take personal responsibility to take the initiative and seek out activities that will help develop the targeted competencies.
12.3 This display of initiative and follow through can show that the employee is serious about succession and may, in itself, be a key competency.

3. FORMALISE ELIGIBILITY

13.1 Avenues to increase flexibility to formalize eligibility include:

13.1.1 Use "until further notice" recruitment announcements so that employees can submit their application at any time.
13.1.2 Use desirable, not minimum, qualifications (recognize prior learning)
13.1.3 Use the "in-training" program that allows bringing the employee in at a lower level with automatic advancement to the higher level.
13.1.4 Use competency based classification structures.

Individual Performance and Organisational Management Systems

Performance Management is a process which measures the implementation of the organisation's strategy. It is also a management tool to plan, monitor, measure and

review performance indicators to ensure efficiency, effectiveness and the impact of service delivery by the municipality.

Strategic performance indicates how well the municipality is meeting its objectives and whether policies and processes are working effectively.

Our IDP process and the performance management process are integrated and the IDP fulfils the planning stage of performance management whilst performance management in return, fulfils the implementation management, monitoring and evaluation of the IDP.

The Service Delivery and Budget Implementation Plan (SDBIP) assist to achieve the objectives and priorities adopted in the IDP and indicators that measure

7.12 KPA 5: Good Governance

STRATEGIC OBJECTIVE

- Promotion of Local Economic Development with specific focus on shared growth.
- To create an enabling environment for economic growth in Kamiesberg that attracts investors, encourages innovation and facilitate pro-poor intervention
- To ensure a municipality that is committed to an innovative approach, prudent investment of public funds, good governance, financial viability and optimal institutional transformation that accommodates diversity in service delivery
- To develop socially integrated, safe and healthy communities
- To ensure ecological integrity and climate response through sustainable practices.
- To develop progressive strategies to optimize the use of available human resources
- To facilitate real opportunities for youth, women, and disabled and appropriate care for the aged
- To provide and maintain superior decentralized consumer services (Water, sanitation, roads, storm water, waste management and electricity).
- Reduction of infrastructure backlogs i.e. human settlement, water, roads, electricity etc.
- To ensure compliance as prescribed by relevant legislation.

INTENDED OUTCOME

Through our Strategic Objectives and the 5 Local Government Key Performance Areas, the municipality will always strive to achieve its developmental mandate.

The following are the five local governments KPA's:

- Institutional Capacity and Municipal Transformation
- Basic Service and Infrastructure Development
- Financial Viability
- Local Economic Development

Public Participation and Good Governance.

Governance Structures:

AUDIT COMMITTEE

The Kamiesberg Municipality did not have its own committee but make use of a shared committee of the District Municipality.

The committee consist of the following members:

- Mr F Rootdman
- Mr F van den Heever

Functions of the Committee

- To advise the municipal council, the political office - bearers, the accounting officer and the management staff of the municipality, or the board of directors, the accounting officer and the management staff of the municipal entity, on matters relating to -

(1) Internal financial control and internal audits;

(2) Risk management;

(3) Accounting policies;

(4) The adequacy, reliability and accuracy of financial reporting and information;

(5) Performance management;

(6) Effective governance;

(7) Compliance with this Act, the Annual Division of Revenue Act and any other applicable legislation;

(8) Performance evaluation; and

(9) Any other issues referred to it by the municipality or municipal entity;

) Review the annual financial statements to provide the council of the municipality or, in the case of a municipal entity, the council of the parent municipality and the board of directors of the entity, with an authoritative and credible view of the financial position of the municipality or municipal entity, its efficiency and effectiveness and its overall level of compliance with this Act, the annual Division of Revenue Act and any other applicable legislation;

(c) Respond to the council on any issues raised by the Auditor – General in the audit report;

(d) carry out such investigations into the financial affairs of the municipality or municipal entity as the council of the municipality, or in the case of a municipal entity, the council of the parent municipality or the board of directors of the entity may request; and

(e) perform such other functions as may be prescribed.

MPAC COMMITTEE

To exercise oversight over the executive functionaries of council and to ensure good governance in the municipality.

This function is shared within the Namakwa District Municipality. Councilor R G C Cloete is the representative of our municipality to the district MPAC.

MUNICIPAL WARD COMMITTEES

DEFINITION OF WARD COMMITTEES

Ward committees are an exciting way of achieving objectives and aims of developmental local government as outlined in the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996. The objective of a ward committee is to enhance participatory democracy in local government. A Forum for deliberative democracy through: -

- Faster access to information
- Instant clarification about programmes
- Awareness building
- Fosters feeling of self-management
- Transparency in administration
- Proper harnessing of local resources
- Involvement/Quick decision making
- Sense of ownership
- Better planning ascertaining local needs and requirements
- Social Audit,
- Accountability,
- Closer monitoring and evaluation of service delivery

RELEVANT LEGISLATION

•The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996-Chapter 7 Section 152
•The Local Government: Municipal Structures Act, 1998 -Sections 73 and 74.
•The Local Government: Municipal Systems Act, 2000- Chapter 4
•The National Guidelines for the Establishment and Operation of Municipal Ward committees, 2005
• Public Participation policy of the KAMIESBERG MUNICIPALITY.

ESTABLISHMENT OF WARD COMMITTEES

The Kamiesberg Ward committees will be made up of elected members of a particular Ward within Kamiesberg local Municipality. Ward Councillor shall convene a constituency's meeting. The Kamiesberg Speaker will conduct elections to ensure that they are independent. Ward committee can have up to 10 members through call for nominations and voting. Ward committee should be representative of all interest groups e.g. women, youth, disabled.
In the case of death or resignation of a ward committee member, the Kamiesberg Speaker will convene a meeting of that particular ward for a replacement by following the procedures and processes of electing a ward committee.

ROLE OF WARD COMMITTES

The Kamiesberg Municipality ward committee's role is as follows: -
• Increase the participation of local residents in Municipal decision making.
• Represent the local ward and are not politically aligned.
• Should be involved in the Integrated Development Planning process, Municipal performance management, annual Budget, Council projects and other key activities and programmes.
• Can identify and initiate projects to improve the lives of the people in the ward.
• Can support the Ward Councillor in dispute resolutions.
• Monitoring of the performance of the Municipality and raise issues of concern for the ward.
• Assist with community awareness campaigns e.g. Waste, water and sewerage, payment of fees and charges, etc.

7.16 HEALTH CARE SERVICES

Background.

Kamiesberg is a sub – district of the Namakwa district in the Northern Cape Province. It is bordered by the following Sub – Districts; Nama Khoi, Khai – Ma and Hantam Municipalities. The N 7 National Road from Western Cape Province to Namibia runs through the sub – district. It is the most rural sub – district in the district.

Facilities' in the sub – district are:

1 CHC – Joe Slovo

4 Fixed facilities – Leliefontein, Kamieskroon, Kharkams and Hondeklipbaai

1 Satelite - Garies

10 Health post – Paulshoek, Kamassies, Rooifontein, Nourivier, Tweerivier, Spoegrivier, Soebatsfontein, Klipfontein, Lepelsfontein ans Kheis.

Challenges Identified.

a. Kamiesberg are a water scares area, all health facilities experience a shortage of water generally, some days no running water.
b. Transport – patient, emergency and transport to render primary health care services at satellite clinics.
c. Resources, human and other
d. Poor condition of gravel roads

The Sub – district identified the following poor performing indicators for intervention, in order to be able to achieve the district aspirations and Provincial goals:

a. Mother Postnatal visits within 6 days rate
b. Couple year protection rate
c. Cervical cancer screening coverage
d. Immunization coverage under one year
e. Vitamin A dose 12 – 59 months coverage
f. Infant exclusively breastfed at DTaP-IPV-HIB-HBV 3rd dose rate
g. TB client lost to follow up
h. TB symptoms 5 years and older screened in facility rate
i. Adult / child with viral load completion rate at 12 months.
j. ART client loss to follow up.

CHAPTER 8. STRATEGIC INTENT DEVELOPMENT AND PROJECTS

8.1 SWOT Analysis

A SWOT analysis is a commonly used tool used to facilitate a strategic review of a particular organisation. It is a high-level exercise that identifies strengths, weaknesses, opportunities and threats of the organisation. The strengths and weaknesses are internal factors that the organisation may control. Opportunities and threats are those factors external to the organisation and therefore the organisation has little or no control over these macro environment factors.

The SWOT analysis does not identify what should be done. Rather, it provides a framework for identifying where strategic opportunities may exist and how to avoid weaknesses inherent in the organisation or external threats from limiting future expansion and growth. The purpose of the SWOT analysis is to identify and assess the strengths, weaknesses, opportunities and threats in the Kamiesberg LM, in terms of local economic development. The identification of strengths, weaknesses, opportunities and threats within the municipal area provides the basis upon which the pillars of the LED strategy may be built.

Weakness	**Strengths**
▪ Water shortages □ High poverty situation □ Mostly gravel roads □ High cost of land □ Very poor public transport network □ Low institutional capacity (municipal workforce & budget) □ Low rainfall □ Lighthouse at Hondeklipbaai is not functioning properly □ Arid to semi-arid land with low carrying capacity □ Electricity outages/surges □ Lack of cell phone signal in some	▪ High quality & unspoiled environment □ Diversity of scenic landscapes and vast amounts of open land □ Diversity of local cultures □ Historical networks linked mainly to agricultural history (Khoi-San) □ Harbour at Hondeklipbaai □ Flowers – flower season □ Sun – renewable energy potential □ Ocean – mariculture potential □ Abundant labour □ N7 link to Namibia

areas ☐ Land reform taking place too slowly ☐ Skills gap within the local population ☐ Municipal owned land is not being used for its best strategic uses ☐ Low-income levels and low spending capabilities ☐ Lack of jobs and economic development ☐ Seasonality of working opportunities ☐ Lack of support for emerging entrepreneurs ☐ Lack of access to land for local residents ☐ Lack of integrated domestic and international marketing of the area ☐ Fragmentation of tourism industry ☐ Lack of access to good health care ☐ Lack of sport and recreational facilities ☐ Poor quality of education ☐ Poor resourcing of LED strategies ☐ Increasing drug related crimes ☐ High levels of teenage pregnancy ☐ High dependency on social grants and wage income by the poor ☐ Geographically dispersed small population and far	

from sources of industrial inputs and from markets □ Undiversified economy: over-dependence on mining and government services sectors □ Virtually non-existent manufacturing industry	
Threats Climate change that will impact on water resources and agricultural activities □ Water supply □ Water quality □ Political dynamics/uncertainties □ Narrowing agriculture profit margins □ Fluctuations in tourism industry □ Global uncertainty of economic conditions □ Fluctuations in Rand cycles	**Opportunities** Growth in tourism (N7 link to Namibia) □ Unexploited mineral opportunities □ Brand development □ Strengthening local government spheres □ EPWP, SETAs and learner ships □ Renewable energy □ Mariculture □ Opportunities for technology to fill gaps □ Agro-processing and technology innovations

8.2 Strategic Objectives

In order for a Municipality to function efficiently and effectively, prior planning has to be carried out in order to ensure that the needs of the Municipality and community are balanced with what is practically possible to achieve in line with available human and financial capacity.

8.3 Intended Outcome

The IDP as a whole forms part of this planning process, however, Sector Planning is important in order to focus on a specific focus and guide the Municipality in what projects need to be initiated and implemented. The Sector Plans need to be aligned to the IDP in order to ensure that there is holistic planning. Below are summaries of key Sector Plans that have been prepared by Kamiesberg Municipality.

The sector plans and key policy documents required of a municipality to support the delivering the above services in providing strategic and policy direction are summarized in the following diagram:

8.4 Infrastructure Development

Poverty Alleviation and Job Creation is some of our biggest challenges that escalate in to other serious social crimes such as alcohol and drug abuses, illegal mining and the illegal selling of endangered species

The municipality therefore identified the following Mega Projects to broaden its tax basis and alleviate poverty and create jobs.To implement these projects the municipality, need the support of our District, Provincial and National Government. It also creates the perfect opportunity for

Public Private Partnerships
These projects are:

1. Tar / Upgrading of gravel road from Garies via Kheis, Paulshoek, Leliefontein, Nourivier to Kamieskroon.

We are from the view that if this project can realise service delivery can be done

2. Completion of the Klipfontein - Hondeklipbaai Road.
3. Coastal Development: Hondeklipbaai and Eiland Punt Noord

COASTAL DEVELOPMENT

The Coastal town of the Kamiesberg Municipality is Hondeklipbay. Hondeklip Bay lies about 95 km south west of Springbok. This village was originally used as a harbor to export copper ore from the mines around Springbok but was later surpassed by Port Nolloth, which had a safer harbor as well as a railway line.

Today Hondeklip Bay is a popular regional holiday destination and serves the fishing and diamond-mining community. Holiday accommodation ranges from camping at the municipal caravan park to self-catering chalets.

Attractions include ship wrecks like the Jahleel and the Aristea which ran aground in 2003 and 1945 respectively. In July 2016, the Jahleel started breaking up and split in two.

COASTAL INFRASTRUCTURE PRIORITIES IN KAMIESBERG MUNICIPALITY:

- Small harbour development
- Fishing and fish processing

Beach front development





8.5 Public Launched Site

In terms of General Notice 31 of 2021 dated 26 March 2021 by the Department of Environment and Nature Conservation that Hondeklipbaai is proclaimed a Public Launched Site.

A draft Operational Plan is drafted. We are busy with our community participation process.

The content of the plan is:

1. Background

History and background to the Hondeklip Bay PLS

This village of Hondeklip Bay was originally used as a harbour to export copper ore from the mines around Springbok but was later surpassed by Port Nolloth, which had a safer harbour as well as a railway line.

Today Hondeklip Bay is a popular regional holiday destination and serves the fishing and diamond-mining community. Holiday accommodation ranges from camping at the municipal caravan park to self-catering accommodation.

Attractions include ship wrecks like the Jahleel and the Aristea which ran aground in 2003 and 1945 respectively. The mouth of the Spoeg River-a site of archaeological interest-is located about 18 km SSE down the coast from Hondeklip Bay.

There is only one designated Public Launch Site (PLS) along the entire Kamiesberg coastline. The PLS in Hondeklip is located adjacent to the Hondeklip Bay harbour. Although the harbour has a slipway, it is dilapidated, thus fishermen and the general public currently use the entire beach as a launching site.

The tourism usage of the Hondeklip Bay PLS is highly seasonal-with peaks during December, January and Easter. Stemming from the latter users of the PLS must thus be cognisant as the beach is used for recreation as well

1.2 Site Location

Geographical Information			
Location Description			
District	Namakwa	**Town**	Hondeklip Bay
Northern Cape		Kamiesberg	
GPS Co-ordinates of PLS Access Point			
Latitude	30°19'00.4"S	**Longitude**	17°16'27.6"E

1.3 Legal Status of this Site as a PLS

The Hondeklip Bay PLS was listed as an official Public Launch Site-by the MEC for Agriculture, Environmental Affairs, Rural Development, and Land Reform, GM Manopole-in the Provincial Gazette 2406 on 26 March 2021. The Kamiesberg Municipality was identified as the responsible Management Body for the PLS.

2. Access Management

1 As a listed Public launch site, boats shall at all times have priority use of the PLS over all other users who shall move out of the way (including their belongings) without unreasonable delay or argument after being requested to do so.

3.2 In the interest of safety and minimising frustration to boaters and others, everyone is required to strictly adhere to these guidelines and to report any ongoing disregard thereof to the compliance officers in serious cases.

3.3 All skippers shall strive to minimise the time their boats and trailers occupy the PLS in the interest of other boaters. In this regard, skippers are encouraged to prepare a pre-launch checklist, including pre-season equipment checks, and to ensure that all crew and drivers are available to avoid delay prior to entering the queue to launch. No one may enter the queue if boats are waiting to return.

3.4 Boats returning from the sea shall have priority access to the PLS over boats wanting to launch (except for those boats already queued up to launch) and the latter shall not obstruct access to the PLS nor hinder retrieval.

3.5 Kayaks, surf skis and other equipment shall not be left irresponsibly on the PLS where these can obstruct or hinder the full use of the PLS by boaters and others.

3.6 Should there be space to accommodate more than one vehicle at a time, it should be done timeously, responsibly and when it is safe.

3.7 All trailers and boats shall be fitted with safety chains/ropes and these shall be used at all times that the boat is on the trailer.

3.8 There must be no bathers while boats are launched or returning from the sea.

3.9 The skipper, prior to pulling off, shall nominate a crew member, if present, also to look out for bathers in the water and other boats before proceeding at a safe speed.

3.10 The SAMSA regulations regarding required trailer markings shall be complied with.

3.11 The use of lifejackets is compulsory and skipper compliance certificates shall strictly be adhered to. Marine radio and cell phone reception is poor in some areas so skippers should ensure that their intended destination(s) is known to the emergency contact person.

3.12 Non-fishing boats coming back to off-load passengers, or to pick up passengers, shall pull to the side of the PLS while avoiding undue delays. No boats may be left unattended at any time.

3.13 Once boats are retrieved they must be removed timeously to provide others attempting to launch sufficient space to do so and for other vehicles to pass.

3.14 Compliance officers, where reasonable, are requested not to perform their inspections in areas that obstruct or unreasonably delay the launching or retrieval of other boats.

NOTE: A summary of these Guidelines will be displayed on a signboard at the top of the PLS for polite referral to anyone not complying thereto.

4. Parking and Control Area

4.1 The unpaved parking area above the PLS is small and is not demarcated. Users are requested to ensure trailers and vehicles are parked orderly to maximise

numbers accommodated in peak season. Where possible, towing vehicles and trailers should be returned to home base while boats are on the water.

4.2 Vehicles are not allowed to park on the beach.



Figure 1: Hondeklip Bay PLS

5. Environmental Considerations

5.1 The users of this site must comply with the provisions of the general duty of care principle and the remediation stipulated in terms of section 28 of the National Environmental Management Act, 1998 (Act No. 107 of 1998), the provisions of the National Environmental Management: Integrated Coastal Management Act, 2008 (Act No. 24 of 2008) as well as all other relevant legislation.

5.2 No washing of vessels, trailers or vehicles or scaling and cleaning of fish and consequent disposal of bait may take place on the site.

5.3 Everyone using the site and the beach areas shall collect their litter and dispose of these in the refuse bins provided.

6. Management Agent

In the instance that the Kamiesberg municipality decides to contract a management agent to manage the PLS on its behalf it must be done in accordance with a Service Level Agreement (SLA).

8.6 Tourism Development

Kamiesberg Municipality have a variety of tourism potential e.s historical, cultural and our well known beautiful flowers during springtime. The opportunity is there to unlock a tourism season from January up till December.

- Roodebergskloof Guest Farm
- Leliefontein Massa care (history)
- Leliefontein Methodist Church (National Monument)
- Betelsklip (history / cultural)
- Namakwa National Park
- Kliphuis
- Moertjieklip
- Daters' Poort (Grave of Lieutenant James Darter / this small piece of land belong to England) (history)
- Letter Klip (history)
- Aristea ship wreck (history)

8.7 Current and Planned Projects

During this year-round of community participation, we give members not only a change to identified their needs but also vote for the biggest challenge in their respective community. It gives us a clear sense on how to prioritize the needs and therefor come up with a priority list for the Kamiesberg Municipality.

1. Roads
2. Water
3. Health Service
4. Housing & Surveyed of Erven
5. Upgrading of Sportsgrounds

During its last General Council meeting Council adopt the following needs as the most important priorities to render services and to create the necessary jobs for its communities.

1. Water
2. Refuse Removal and Sanitation
3. Roads
4. Electricity
5. Housing
6. Disaster Management
7. SLP Projects
8. Tourism

8.8 Community Needs: 2024 / 2025

TOWN	
HONDEKLIPBAAI	
Community Needs 2023 / 2024	**Community Needs 2024 / 2025**
Health Services / Clinic Services	Roads (Tar of Road : Hondeklipbaai to N7) Paving of Internal Street
Water /	
Roads (Tar of Road : Hondeklipbaai to N7) Paving of Internal Street	Housing
	Erven: Business and Residential
Housing	Sewerage Plant
Erven: Business and Residential	Upgrading of Sports Ground/Facility
Sewerage Plant	Paving of Internal streets
Upgrading of Sports Ground/Facility	Streetlight
Paving of Internal streets	Upgrading of Community Hall
Streetlight	Job creation Projects
Upgrading of Community Hall	Sewerage
Job creation Projects	SMME Development/
Sewerage	Youth Centre
SMME Development/	Recycling
Youth Centre	Ambulance Services
Recycling	Stormwater drainage
Ambulance Services	Upgrading of Jetty
Stormwater drainage	Cleaning of fabric
Upgrading of Jetty	Construction of a Dam
Cleaning of fabric	Security for Fishermen
Construction of a Dam	Water /
KOINGNAAS	
Community Needs 2023 / 2024	**Community Needs 2024 / 2025**
Health / Clinic Service	Health / Clinic Service
Water. Maintenance of Infrastructure	Water. Maintenance of Infrastructure
Maintenance of Roads (Internal / External)	Maintenance of Roads (Internal / External)
Sewerage (maintenance of the Dumping Sites)	Sewerage (maintenance of the Dumping

	Sites)
Streetlights	Streetlights
Upgrading of Community Hall	Upgrading of Community Hall
Cell Phone Reception	Cell Phone Reception
Pre-Paid Water meters	Pre-Paid Water meters
SOEBATSFONTEIN	
Community Needs 2023 / 2024	**Community Needs 2024 / 2025**
Health / Clinic Service	Health / Clinic Service
Upgrading of Desalination Plant	Upgrading of Desalination Plant
Construction of Roads (to Kamieskroon and Kommagas)	Construction of Roads (to Kamieskroon and Kommagas)
Surveyed of erven: business and residential	Surveyed of erven: business and residential
Housing	Housing
Building of a Police Station	Building of a Police Station
Upgrading of roads and bridges	Upgrading of roads and bridges
Sewerage	Sewerage
Recycling	Recycling
Recreation facilities	Recreation facilities
Nameboard	Nameboard
Cleaning of fountains	Cleaning of fountains
Upgrading of commonage land	Upgrading of commonage land
Transformation of Bloukamp	Transformation of Bloukamp
Ambulance service – speed – up	Ambulance service – speed – up
SPOEGRIVIER	
Community Needs 2023 / 2024	**Community Needs 2024 / 2025**
Health and Clinic services	Health and Clinic services
Upgrading of desalination plants	Upgrading of desalination plants
Electricity- repair/maintenance of infrastructure	Electricity- repair/maintenance of infrastructure
Construction of tar road to N7	Construction of tar road to N7
Surveyed of business and residential erven	Surveyed of business and residential erven
Housing	Housing
Upgrading of sport facilities	Upgrading of sport facilities
Upgrading of landfill site	Upgrading of landfill site
Vandalism a big problem	Vandalism a big problem
Drug abuse	Drug abuse

Upgrading of Graveyard	Upgrading of Graveyard
Play park for kids	Play park for kids
Internet Access	Internet Access
Crèche	Crèche
Streetlights	Streetlights
Library	Library
Police Station	Police Station
Sewerage	Sewerage
Refuse removal (regular)	Refuse removal (regular)
SMME development	SMME development
Street name	Street name
GARIES	
Community Needs 2023 / 2024	**Community Needs 2024 / 2025**
Water. Get water from outside resources such as Orange and Olifants River	Water. Get water from outside resources such as Orange and Olifants River
Paving of Internal roads	Paving of Internal roads
Housing	Housing
Upgrading of Sportsground / sport facilities	Upgrading of Sportsground / sport facilities
Upgrading of Graveyard	Upgrading of Graveyard
Crèche	Crèche
Climate change / Renewable Energy	Climate change / Renewable Energy
Windfarms / Solar Energy	Windfarms / Solar Energy
Streetlights	Streetlights
Ablution facilities	Ablution facilities
Infrastructure	Infrastructure
"Leerlooiery"	"Leerlooiery"
Construction of pavers	Construction of pavers
Water. Get water from outside resources such as Orange and Olifants River	
LEPELFONTEIN	
Community Needs 2023 / 2024	**Community Needs 2024 / 2025**
Health / Clinic service	Upgrading of desalination Plant
Upgrading of desalination Plant	Electricity
Electricity	Construction of access roads
Construction of access roads	Upgrading of sports fields
Upgrading of sports fields	Vandalism
Vandalism	Drug abuse
Drug abuse	Internet Access
Internet Access	Paving of internal roads
Paving of internal roads	Upgrading of Community Hall
Upgrading of Community Hall	Water for Crops
Water for crops	Ablution facilities / toilets

Ablution facilities / toilets	Tourism development
KLIPFONTEIN	
Community Needs 2023 / 2024	**Community Needs 2024 / 2025**
Health / Clinic service	Health / Clinic service
Water. Upgrading of Desalination Plants. Upgrading of internal network	Water. Upgrading of Desalination Plants. Upgrading of internal network
Completion of Klipfontein – Hondeklipbaai tar road	Completion of Klipfontein – Hondeklipbaai tar road
Cell phone reception	Cell phone reception
Housing	Housing
Upgrading of Sport facilities	Upgrading of Sport facilities
Streetlights	Streetlights
Vee suipings	Vee suipings
Soup kitchen	Soup kitchen
Library	Library
Police Station	Police Station
Job Creation Projects	Job Creation Projects
Upgrading of roads and bridges	Upgrading of roads and bridges
KHEIS	
Community Needs 2023 / 2024	**Community Needs 2024 / 2025**
	Water. Upgrading of Desalination plant. Upgrading of internal water network
Water. Upgrading of Desalination plant. Upgrading of internal water network	Tar of road to Garies. Alternative road to Springbok. Paving of internal streets.
Tar of road to Garies. Alternative road to Springbok. Paving of internal streets.	
	Surveyed of business and residential erven.
Surveyed of business and residential erven.	Housing
Housing	Upgrading of sports facilities
Upgrading of sports facilities	Crèche
Crèche	Internet Access
Internet Access	Streetlights
Streetlights	JoJo Tanks for house holds
JoJo Tanks for house holds	Maintenance and repair of Dam
Maintenance and repair of Dam	Maintenance of internal streets
Maintenance of internal streets	Cameras at Community Hall for security purpose
Cameras at Community Hall for security purpose	
	Ram Camp
Ram Camp	Upgrading of community hall

Upgrading of community hall	Vee suipings
Vee suipings	Toilette
Toilette	Vegetable Garden
PAULSHOEK	
Community Needs 2023 / 2024	**Community Needs 2024 / 2025**
	Health / Clinic service
Health / Clinic service	Construction of roads in the vicinity
Construction of roads in the vicinity	Surveyed of business and residential erven
Surveyed of business and residential erven	Housing
Housing	Upgrading of Landfill site
Upgrading of Landfill site	Upgrading of sports facilities
Upgrading of sports facilities	Vandalism
Vandalism	Drug abuse
Drug abuse	Cleaning of Graveyard
Cleaning of Graveyard	Solar and Wind Farms
Solar and Wind Farms	High mast Lightning
ROOIFONTEIN	
Community Needs 2023 / 2024	**Community Needs 2024 / 2025**
	Health / Clinic Service
Health / Clinic Service	Water
Water	Construction / maintenance of Roads
Construction / maintenance of Roads	Surveyed of residential and business erven
Surveyed of residential and business erven	Housing
Housing	Street lights
Street lights	Construction of roads and bridges
Construction of roads and bridges	Cell phone reception
Cell phone reception	
	Sewerage
Sewerage	Tourism development
Tourism development	Powerline
Powerline	Additional land for agricultural purposes
KAMASSIES	
Community Needs 2023 / 2024	**Community Needs 2024 / 2025**
Health / Clinic Service	
Upgrading of desalination plant / water	
Construction of roads and bridges	
Surveyed of business and residential erven	
Upgrading of sport facilities	

Construction of new graveyard
Street lights
Paving of internal streets
Police Station
Sewerage System
Youth Centre
Tourism Development

	Construction of roads and bridges
	Surveyed of business and residential erven
	Upgrading of sport facilities
	Construction of new graveyard
	Street lights
	Paving of internal streets
	Police Station
	Sewerage System
	Youth Centre
	Tourism Development
NOURIVIER	
Community Needs 2023 / 2024	**Community Needs 2024 / 2025**
Community did not take part in the IDP process **2022 / 2023**	Community did not take part in the IDP process **2022 / 2023**
2023 / 2024	**2023 / 2024**
Pre Paid Water meters	Pre Paid Water meters
Street Lights	Street Lights
Construction and maintenance of Roads	Construction and maintenance of Roads
Learnerships	Learnerships
Library	Library
Upgrading of Dumping site	Upgrading of Dumping site
Upgrading of Sports facility	Upgrading of Sports facility
KHARKAMS	
Community Needs 2023 / 2024	**Community Needs 2024 / 2025**
Water for House Hold	Water for House Hold
Paving of internal roads	Paving of internal roads
Surveyed of residential and business erven	Surveyed of residential and business erven
Housing	Housing
Health / Clinic Service	Health / Clinic Service
Completion of Sports facility	Completion of Sports facility
Vandalism	Vandalism
Upgrading of graveyard	Upgrading of graveyard

TWEERIVIER	
Community Needs 2023 / 2024	**Community Needs 2024 / 2025**
Health / Clinic Service	Completion of internal water network
Completion of internal water network	Construction of roads
Construction of roads	
	Surveyed of business and residential erven
Surveyed of business and residential erven	Extension of Graveyard
Extension of Graveyard	Crèche
Crèche	Paving of internal streets
Paving of internal streets	Street lights
Street lights	Upgrading of community hall
Upgrading of community hall	Police station
Police station	Sewerage
Sewerage	Regular refuse removal
KAMIESKROON	
Community Needs 2023 / 2024	**Community Needs 2024 / 2025**
Water. Upgrading of network.	Paving of internal streets
Paving of internal streets	Surveyed of business and residential erven
Surveyed of business and residential erven	Housing
Housing	Upgrading of sports facilities
Upgrading of sports facilities	Construction / extension of graveyard
Construction / extension of graveyard	Paving
Paving	Street lights
Street lights	Vee suipings
Vee suipings	Street trading
Street trading	Tourism development
LELIEFONTEIN	
Community Needs 2023 / 2024	**Community Needs 2024 / 2025**
Health / Clinic Service	Maintenance of Landfill site
Water. Desalination Plants	Upgrading of sport facility
Construction / building of roads	Extension of graveyard
Maintenance of Landfill site	High Mast Lightning / Solar and Wind
Upgrading of sport facility	Energy
Extension of graveyard	Construction / building of roads
High Mast Lightning / Solar and Wind Energy	Street Light

	Upgrading of Community Hall
	Regular refuse removal
Street Light	Health / Clinic Service
Upgrading of Community Hall	Water. Desalination Plants

8.9 Unfunded Projects for the Department of Economic Development and Tourism

1. Kheis Charcoal Project
2. Spoegrivier Medicinal Plant Nursery
3. Rooifontein Quiver Tree Conservancy
4. Kharkams Tourism Hub

8.10. Projects from the Department of Education

1. High School Garies: "Maintenance and Repair. Major Repair and Renovation to school including replacement of Wooden floors in school Hall and Girls hostel. R 4 088 709.00
2. Kheis Methodist Primary School: "Maintenance to facility and eradication of PIT Latrines or Unsafe VIP Toilets". R 150 000.00
3. Leliefontein Intermediary: Minor repairs and Electricity. R 319 100.00
4. Klipfontein Methodist Primary: "Preventative Maintenance" R 829 172.00
5. Nourivier Methodist Primary: "Preventative Maintenance" R 829 172.00
6. High School Garies: "Delivery of water due to water challenges at Municipality. R 250 000.00
7. High School Garies: "Appointment of Geo Hydrologist for Area and implementation of remedial action". R 350 00.00

8.11 Housing Projects from COGHSTA

Garies (30) (A23110011/1)

Kheis (30) (A23110012/1)

Spoegrivier (30) (A23110014/1)

Klipfontein (15) (A23110013/1)

Tweerivier (15) (A23110014/1)

Paulshoek (10) (A20010011/1)

Soebatsfontein (10) (A20010012/1)

8.12 KAMIESBERG MUNICIPALITY: CAPITAL BUDGET 2022/2023 FINANCIAL YEAR- IMPLEMENTATION PLAN.

No	Project Name	Budget	2022/2023 Fin Year	Status	Funder
1	Koingnaas / Hondeklipbaai Bulk water Supply. Construction of new 250 mm x 16 km HDPE pipelines to Koingnaas. 2. Refurbishments of midway tanks, 3 new 160 mm x 20 km HDPE pipelines, 4 Construction of 200 kl galvanized tank in Hondeklipbaai and, 5 Installation of new telemetric system.	R 32 000 000.00	R 5 000 000.00	Implementation	Dept Water & Sanitation
2	Rooifontein Bulk Water Supply- 1. Equipping of boreholes, 2 Construction of water treatment plant and, 4 Construction of Evaporation Ponds	R 25 000 000.00	R 4 000 000 .00	Design phase – Partial Construction can commence	COGSTA/MIG
3	Kharkams Borehole Development. 1. Drilling of Boreholes, 2 Equipping of Boreholes, 3 Construction of 12 km HDPE pipeline, 4 Construction of Pumphouses, 5 Installation of telemetric system, 6 Construction of Booster & Balancing tanks, 7 Installation of 400 Pre – paid watermasters	R 31 000 000 .00	R 3 800 000.00	Drilling contractor will be appointed before 3 May 2022	COGSTHA/MIG

8.12 KAMIESBERG MUNICIPALITY: CAPITAL PROJECTS REGISTERED & OR READY FOR IMPLEMENTATION

No	PROJECT NAME	BUDGET	STATUS	FUNDER
1	Installation of pre – paid water meters in Kamiesberg Municipal area- Business plan drafted	R 15 000 000.00	Bussiness plan drafted	Dept. Water & Sanitation / WSIG or COGHTA /MIG
2	Construction of Hondeklipbay Bulk Sewer	R 15 000 000.00	Preliminary Design	Dept. Water & Sanitation / WSIG or COGHTA /MIG
3	Construction of Koingnaas Bulk sewer	R 10 000 000.00	Design Phase	Dept. Water & Sanitation / WSIG or COGHTA /MIG
4	Street Lightning in Soebatsfontein	R 2 200 000.00	Business (MIG1) Plan Submitted	COGHSTA /MIG
5	Street Lightning in Kharkams – Highmast Ligthning	R 2 400 000.00	Business (MIG1) Plan Submitted	COGHSTA /MIG
6	Street Lightning in Tweerivier – Highmast Ligthning	R 1 200 000.00	Business (MIG1) Plan Submitted	COGHSTA /MIG
7	Street Lightning in Lepelsfontein – Highmast Ligthning	R 2 700 000.00	Business (MIG1) Plan Submitted	COGHSTA /MIG
8	Street Lightning in Hondeklipbaai – Highmast Ligthning	R 3 200 000.00	Business (MIG1) Plan Submitted	COGHSTA /MIG

8.14 DIVISSION of REVENUE ACT: 2023 / 2026 ALLOCATIONS

GRANT	2023 / 2024	2024 / 2025	2025 / 2026
Municipal Infrastructure Grant	8 086 000 .00	8 236 000 .00	8 392 000 .00
Water & Sanitation Infrastructure Grant	4 540 000 .00	8 924 000.00	9 322 000.00
Finance Management Grant	3 100 000.00	3 100 000 .00	3 100 000 .00
Integrated National Electrification	-	2 100 000.00	1 800 000.00

8.15 EPIP Projects

Province: Northern Cape

District: Namakwa

Municipality: Kamiesberg

PROJECT NAME	PROJECT DESCRIPTION	FOCUS AREA	RECOMMENDED BUDGET	APPLI CANT	CATE GORY
Nourivier Medicinal Plants	Branch Priority: Project initiated by the DST and implemented by CSIR. Infrastructure exists. Requires refurbishment. Entails cultivation, primary processing and supply of Sceletium and Cancer bush (25 Priority species) raw materials.	Biodiversity Economy	R 5 000 000.00	Nourivier Community	Infra structure
NC – Kamiesberg LM: Upgrading of existing and establishment of new recreational park	Planting of trees, installation of park furniture, upgrading of ablution facilities, installation of play equipment of a new recreational park.	GOSM	R 5 000 000.00	KLM	Infra structure
Transformation of existing village into green villages	Establishment of eco-schools, upgrade and establish communal medicinal garden, establish household food gardens, implement green technology initiatives, equip fountains and water tanks.	GOSM	R 12 000 000.00	KLM	Mass Employ ment
Establishment of	A new 2.1 m high	People in	R 10 000 000.00	KLM	Infra

environmental education Centre and caravan park	Black Mesh Fence will be installed to control access and provide security for visitors to the facility. Two doubled gates will be installed; Security Guardhouse: Construction of new paved streets; Upgrade existing ablution block; Construction of caravan bays; construction of 7 new braai stands; Electrical works; Water infrastructure. Rubble bins at Caravan Bays and Braai stands. Enviro educational training/tourism info centre150sqm.	Parks			structure
Upgrading of Roodebergskloof conservation Farm	Construction of 2 enviro friendly ablution blocks with access for woman, men and disabled. Construction of 10 braai areas; Construction of 10 chalets; Re - graveling of km access road to farm. Construction of low water bridge at access road. Upgrading of three hiking trails, 5km , 10km, and 20 km in total 35km. Renovate conference facility.	People in Parks	R 20 000 000.00	KLM	Infra structure

8.16 Social and Labour Plans: Projects

The purpose of the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act, 2002, Act No 28 of 2002 (MPRDA) is amongst others to transform the mining and production industries in South Africa. In order to ensure effective transformation in this regard, the act requires the submission of the Social and Labour Plan as a pre – requisite for the granting of mining or production rights.

The objectives of the Social and Labour plans are to:

- ✓ Promote economic growth and mineral and petroleum resource development in the Republic.
- ✓ Promote employment and advance the social and economic welfare of all South Africans.

- ✓ To utilize and expand the existing skills base for the empowerment of HDSA and to serve the community.

Projects listed for Social and Labour Plans.

Garies.

- ✓ Installed street lights in Delft
- ✓ Repair potholes
- ✓ Re – launch of the mineral water project
- ✓ Upgrading Roodebergskloof Conservation farm

Lepelsfontein.

- ✓ Paving of internal roads
- ✓ Construction of 20 RDP Houses
- ✓ Play Parks
- ✓ Fencing of Community Hall
- ✓ Upgrading of kitchen within Community Hall
- ✓ Installation of water tanks
- ✓ Street Lightning

Hondeklipbaai

- ✓ Speed bumps
- ✓ Refurbishment of Fishers Storage warehouse
- ✓ Beachfront boardwalk
- ✓ Extension of stabilising of beachfront

Soebatsfontein

- ✓ Completion of Library
- ✓ ECD Centre
- ✓ Communication
- ✓ Upgrading of water network
- ✓ Speed bumps
- ✓ Completion of paving

8.17 Projects from Previous Years

Hondeklipbaai	***Projects***	***Estimate Cost***
	Housing	
	Upgrading of dumping site	
	Speed bumps	
	Completion of Storage Warehouse	R 10 mill
	Construction of Tar road from Klipfontein to Hondeklipbaai	R 550 mill
	Extension of stabilizing of beach	

	front	
	Beach Front board walked	
	Upgrading of Old Graveyard as a Historical Site	
	Upgrading of Community Hall	

Koingnaas	***Projects***	***Estimate Cost***
	Maintenance of Internal Roads	
	Sewerage Works	
	Cleaning of Town	

Soebatsfontein	***Projects***	***Estimate Cost***
	Housing	
	Completion of Library	
	Communication (Cell Phone and internet reception)	
	Upgrading of water network	
	Speed bumps	
	Flushed toilets	
	Completion of paving within town	
	Tar of Road from Kamieskroon through Soebatsfontein to Kommaggas	
	Cleaning and Greening stimulus project	
	ECD Centre	

	High Mast Lightning	
	Upgrading of Community Hall	
	Maintenance of Desalination Plant	
	Soup Kitchen	
	Breeding Programme for Emerging Farmers	
	Upgrading of "Old Koshuis"	
	Upgrading of Fencing	

Kamieskroon	***Projects***	***Estimate Cost***
	Housing	
	Construction of VIP toilets – Eco San	
	Paving of internal Roads	
	Upgrading of community Hall	
	Upgrading of Sports Ground	
	Development of a new grave yard	
	Communal taps	
	Fencing of Roads	
	Accredited Training and Skills Development	

Spoegrivier	***Projects***	***Estimate Cost***
	Housing	
	Survey of Plots	
	Sewerage (Vip toilets a major problem)	
	Cleaning of UDS toilets	

	Road signage	
	Upgrading of water network	
	Paving of internal streets	
	Construction of a New Dam	
	Fully Equipped boreholes for drinking water	
	Enclosing existing landfill site	
	Fully equipped clinic	
	Solar panels	
	Upgrading of access road between Kharkams, Spoegrivier and Hondeklipbaai.	
	Water tanks for every household	
	Construction of storage facility at Community Hall	
	Street Names	
	Cell Phone Reception	
	Library	
	Wi Fi	
	Road Sign	

Garies	***Projects***	***Estimate Cost***
	Street lights should be installed in Delft	
	Speed bumps in Main Road	
	Multipurpose Centre	
	Food security promoted through utilization of Commonage	
	Cleaning of Streets	

	Re – launch of the Mineral Water project	
	Entrepreneurs' development project	
	Skills Development projects for the community	
	Namaqua District greening and EPWP Projects	
	Repair potholes	
	Renewable Energy	
	Upgrading of Caravan Park	
	Housing	
	Paving of internal Roads	
	Road Signs	
	Street Names	

Klipfontein	***Projects***	***Estimate Cost***
	High Mass Electricity	
	Proper sanitation	
	Upgrade of water system – Water for RDP Houses	
	Air valves on existing pipeline to distribute evenly water	
	More dams to store water	
	Flush toilets	
	Sat elite police station	
	Fully Equipped Clinic	
	Library	
	Town Cleaning Projects	
	Soup kitchen for Elderly	

	Green tanks	
	UDS toilets	
	Advisory Office	
	Livestock drinking water	
	Play Park	
	Upgrading of Community Hall	
	Fencing of Village	
	Youth development	
	Upgrading of Sports Grounds	
	Upgrading of Landfill Site	
	Paving of Internal Roads	
	Cell Phone Reception	
	Library	
	Cleaning of Towns	

Lepelfontein	***Projects***	***Estimate Cost***
	Paving of internal roads	
	Construction of RDP Houses	
	Play Parks	
	Fencing of Community Hall	
	Upgrading of kitchen within Hall	
	Repair of Toilets	
	Upgrading of Landfill site	
	Fencing of Commonage Land	
	Upgrading of Community Hall	
	Construction of 20 toilets	
	Street Lightning	

	Maintenance of access roads	
	Cleaning and Greening Stimulus Project	
	Water Tanks for H/Hold	
	Toilets and Electricity at Graveyard	
	Upgrading of Mortuary	
	Job Creation Projects	
	Grade R Faccility	

Kharkams	***Projects***	***Estimate Cost***
	Upgrading of Clinic	
	Upgrading of sewerage system	
	Survey of plots	
	Street Lightning	
	Library	
	Storm water drainage System	
	Water tanks for every house hold	
	Draught relief for farmers	
	Design underground Wetland	
	Upgrade of Landfill site	
	Housing	
	Satellite Police station	
	Bakery	
	Completion of Sports Ground	
	ECD Centre	
	Record Management of old Municipal Office at Kharkams	

	Completion of ram camp	
	Source to Sea project	
	High Mast Lightning	
	Khoi San Heritage Route	

Tweerivier	***Projects***	***Estimate Cost***
	Housing	
	Tar of Road between Kharkams ans Tweerivier	
	Fencing of road: from Kharkams via Tweerivier up to Leliefontein and Nourivier	
	Solar panels and windmills on commonage land	
	Extension of graveyard	
	Upgrade of water network and reservoirs	
	Upgrading of community hall	
	Paving	
	ECD Centre	
	Upgrading of Sports Grounds	

Kheis	***Projects***	***Estimate Cost***
	Housing	
	Toilets	
	Water tanks for every households	
	Upgrading of sports grounds	

	Tar of access road to Garies	
	Street lightning	
	Paving of internal roads	
	Cleaning of dam	
	Youth development	
	Vegetable Garden	
	Namakwa district Greening and EPWP project	

Paulshoek	***Projects***	***Estimate Cost***
	Streetlights	
	Satellite police station	
	Soup kitchen	
	Construction of entrance road	
	Paving of internal roads	
	Upgrading of sport grounds	
	RDP House	
	Local Economic Development	
	Telephone and Cell phone reception	

Leliefontein	***Projects***	***Estimate Cost***
	Upgrading of water system	
	More streetlights	
	Renovation, Demolish and reconstruction of Community Hall	
	Construction and upgrading of cemeteries	

	Upgrading of clinic	
	Construction of a police station	
	New grave yard	
	Morgue	
	Efficient Health Care	
	Paving of Entrance road	
	Rectification of RDP Houses	
	Soup Kitchen	
	Upgrading of sport facilities	
	Source to sea project	

Nourivier	***Projects***	***Estimate Cost***
	Refuse removal	
	Street Names	
	Cell phone reception	
	Installation of toilets	
	Sewerage network	
	Upgrading of clinic	
	Storm water system	
	Skills Development	
	Construction / Maintenance of Roads	

Rooifontein	***Projects***	***Estimate Cost***
	Upgrading of sport grounds	
	Housing	
	Renovation of clinic	

	Repair of streetlights	
	Repair of bridge	
	Repair of water pump in river	
	Upgrading of infrastructure on commonage	
	Quiver tree Conservation	

Kamassies	***Projects***	***Estimate Cost***
	Paving of streets	
	Housing	
	Cell phone reception	
	Toilets	
	Upgrading of streetlights	
	Upgrading of access roads	
	Upgrading of clinic	
	Upgrading of infrastructure on commonage land	

8.18 Medicinal Plants of Kamiesberg Municipality

INTRODUCTION

The Namaqualand region is situated along the west coast of South Africa and stretches from the Olifant's River mouth north – wards to the Namibian Border. This region of extreme summer aridity is part of the Succulent Karoo Biome and is famous for the spectacular display of annual flowers in the spring (August to September) and for the high levels of plant endemism, especially succulents (Mucina and Rutherford, 2006). It is also the traditional (original) home of the Nana people, the largest ethnic group of Khoisan speakers, who where historically concentrated in the highlands of the Kamiesberg area, from where they migrated seasonally to other parts of Namaqualand (Webly, 2007) The rich cultural heritage of the Nama people has been described by (Schapera 1930) but the medical ethnobotany has not yet been systematically recorded. The paucity of information on Khoisan ethnobothany has also been commented on by Liengme (1993) , Archer (1994) , and Van Wyk (2002, 2008).

It is noteworthy that the very first ethno botanical survey in South Africa was done in Namaqualand. (Van Der Stel 1685). A few ethno botanical anecdotes were also recorded by William Guybon Atherstone when he visited Namaqualand for five months in 1854 – 1855. Important contributions to the ethnobotanical of Namaqualand were made by Laidler (1928) and Archer (1982, 1990, 1994) described the medical practices and some medical plants of the region but unfortunately only common names were given for most of the plants.

STUDY AREA

The survey was conducted in four villages in the Kamiesberg, namely Kamieskroon, Nourivier, Leliefontein and Paulshoek. The Kamiesberg area represent the highest altitude region in Namaqualand and most of it is covered with fynbos and renosterveld, thus representing an outlying island in the Fynbos Biome within the succulent Karoo. It is situated in the so called Hardeveld or Klipkoppe vegetation unit of Namaqualand and is known as the Kamiesberg Centre of endemism (KBC) because of the high number of endemic species.

DATA COLLECTION

All the ethical guidelines in the latest (2008) version of the *International Society of Ethnoboilogy (2006)* were strictly adhere to, including the principle of educated prior informed consent (with explicit permission to use all photographs, personal details and ethnobotanical information for scientific these and publications). This study was also formally approved by the Science Faculty Ethics Committee of the University of Johannesburg. Over the last 30 years, several scientific studies have been conducted in the Kamiesberg (especially by scientist from the University of Cape Town) so that the area were already familiar with scientific research methodologies.

RESULTS and DISCUSSION

8.19 TRANCRAA Land

The land is presently held in a trust for the communities by the Minister of Rural Development and Land Reform {in terms of the Rural Areas Act, 1987 (Act 9 of 1987) which has since been repealed}. No residents in the Kamiesberg Municipal Area hold individual title deeds for their own on the commonage plots.

The commonage land is subdivided into grazing plots which are then allocated to the different local community members. The allotment of plots is done through an application process wherein a lease agreement is signed between the commonage beneficiary and the Kamiesberg municipality. The use of the commonage land by the beneficiaries is regulated by the grazing regulation that forms part of the Kamiesberg Commonage Management Plan. Land is predominantly used for pasture. There is a limited amount of land that sit alongside the river bank that is used for crop farming. This type of farming is also regulated by the grazing regulation of the municipality. This gives opportunity to local residence that prefer alternative farming practices to be accommodated. The act that came with the purchase of commonage land stipulates that access to certain farms is only permissible for select land users.

Garies and Kamiesberg commonage land has collectively 8 commonage camps that are leased to poor emerging farmers. The Kamiesberg Municipal Council has the prerogative to sell the latter commonage land to individual or family members in line with the principles of the for mentioned act.
The lands are managed by the commonage committee that have the authority to make request for additional land should such need arise from time to time. On recommendations of the commonage committee and after the review by the Economic and Infrastructure Committee the motion is tabled before council who make the final decision whether to proceed with an application to the Department Rural Development and Land Affairs.

8.19.1 Leliefontein

The following village falls within the Leliefontein area, namely: Paulshoek, Leliefontein, Nourivier, Rooifontein, Kamassies, Kheis, Tweerivier, Klipfontein, Kharkams and Spoegrivier

8.19.2 Lepelfontein

Lepelsfontein is part of the greater Rietpoort area that falls within the Western Cape, so here we have a cross boundary issue. The TRANCRAA process did not start in the Lepelsfontein area.

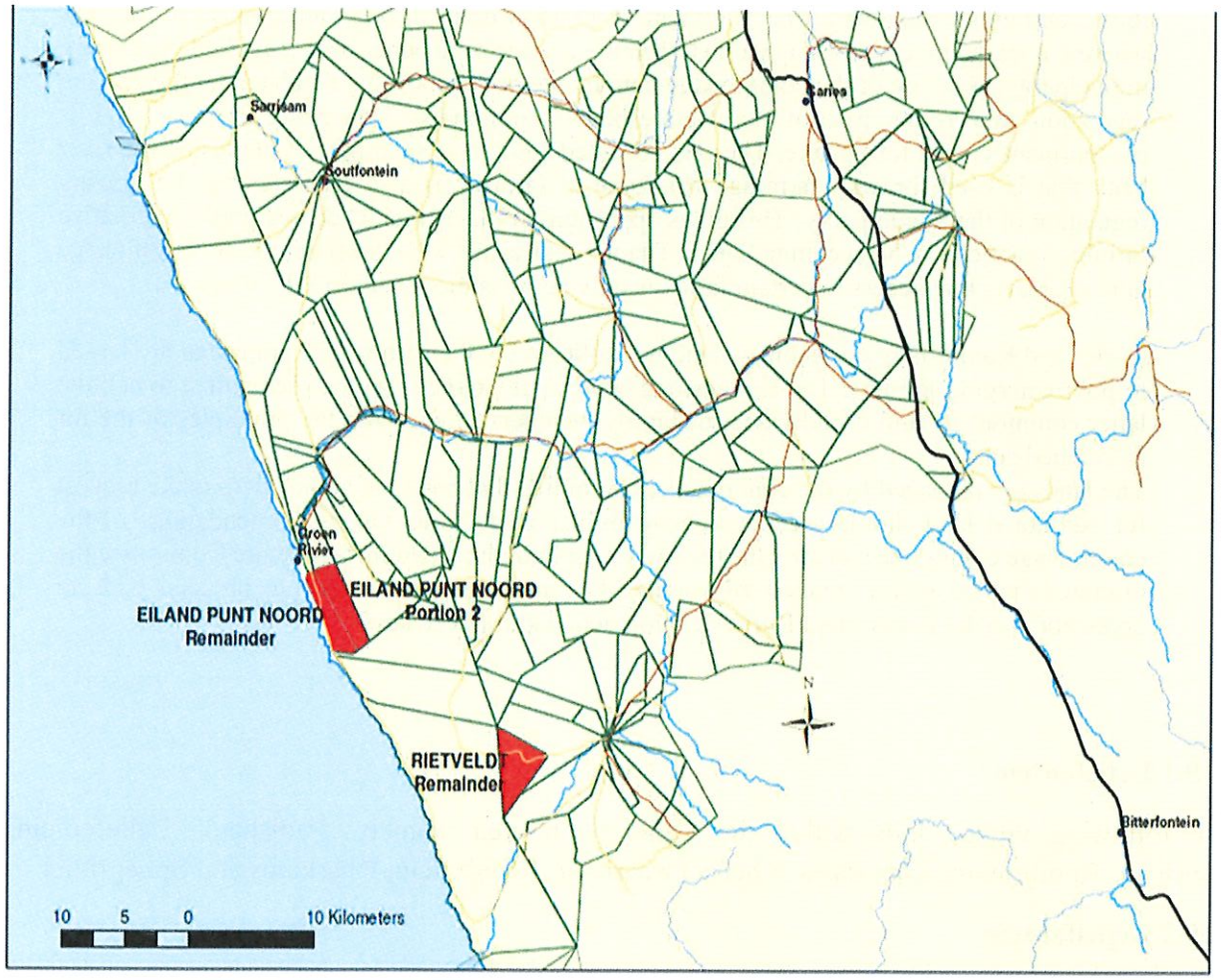
8.19.3 Land Reform

Land Reform is seen to be failing in the area, as claims take years to be processed and many land claim beneficiaries have failed at attempts at farming, for example. A further constrain with regards to land is the mining sector's monopoly over vast stretches of valuable coastal land. These are issues that require creative, collaborative solutions that ensure that land use patterns reflect the economic and social goals of the Kamiesberg Municipality.

In our Municipal Area there is a huge need for land for agricultural purposes.

De Beers donate two farms to the municipality namely Eiland Punt Noord (Remainder) and Rietveld (Remainder)

This Farms rendered the opportunity for coastal development that include accommodation and leisure facilities.



8.20 . LELIEFONTEIN MASSACRE PROJECT

"A RUTHLESS AND UNJUSTIFIABLE ACT"

INTRODUCTION

Leliefontein is a mission station in the Kamiesberg, Namaqualand about 29 km from Kamieskroon. This station is the oldest Methodist Mission Station in South Africa and was established on the 23 October 1815, with the arrival of Reverend Barnabas Shaw of the Wesleyan Methodist Missionary Society. This mission station becomes a major stopover for travelers during those early days. It is at this church that the first and biggest atrocity in Namaqualand happened during the Anglo Boer War in the nineteenth century. The Boer forces under General Manie Maritz massacred 35 Leliefontein inhabitants on 31 January 1902.

The massacre is perhaps a defining symbol of the unjust nature of the Anglo Boer War in the Namaqualand region. It also displays in an eerie way the impact that this war had on the lives of indigenous people of Namaqualand. It is also noticeable that this atrocity took place in the final stages of the Anglo Boer War.

Leliefontein, for more than one reason is an important historical village in the South African context. The Leliefontein massacre is the biggest atrocity where indigenous people of Namaqualand were slaughtered at specific time in the Anglo Boer War and therefore makes the commemoration of this event an essential part of highlighting the impact that it had on the local people of Namaqualand.

The commemoration will focus on the following aspects of the Leliefontein community:

- Honor the memory of those inhabitants who lost their lives
- Ensure that this event provides a balance historical record
- Erect a monument of remembrance. The monument's function is to provide a historical narrative that validates violence and loss of life
- Instill a sense of pride in the lives of poor people
- Build community spirit.

8.21 GREEN CLIMATE FUND PROJECTS

The Northern Cape Province is likely to be adversely affected by global climate change by virtue of its hot and arid climate and the naturally high-energy coastline, coupled with dynamic coastal processes. Coastal settlements and infrastructure will be vulnerable to intensified marine storm surges, coastal erosion events, droughts and terrestrial flooding. These will have important cascading effects on environmental elements, such as water availability, ecological processes and patterns, and social and economic elements, specifically food security, poverty alleviation and sustainable socio-economic growth. According to the Climate Change Vulnerability Assessment for the Namakwa District Municipality, the area will become hotter and drier, with more intense

storms, floods, and droughts. The following are key points of consideration for coastal management in respect to climate change (NDM, 2011; Bourne et al., 2012):

•Evidence of habitat and species shifts and growing numbers of endangered species already present. This is exacerbated by existing pressures of over-grazing, over-abstraction of ground water, land transformation and degradation by mining activities, and illegal harvesting;

•Exacerbation of water scarcity and drought intensification through rising temperatures and changing rainfall patterns, leading to complete desertification, combined with increased risk of extreme flooding in other areas

•Potential damage to infrastructure, such as the coastal town of Port Nolloth, due to predicted sea-level rise and associated increased damage capacity of storm surges.

•Increased vulnerability of already vulnerable, subsistence-based and isolated communities to food insecurity;

•Impacts on livestock, cultivation and fisheries productivity, and thus the sustainability of livelihoods; The project will be allocated along the approximately 413 km Northern Cape coast within a single district municipality-the Namakwa District Municipality. The Northern Cape is South Africa's largest and least populated province. Population distribution along the coast is characterised by widely dispersed human settlements, predominantly rural in nature, with few developed nodes that have emerged largely due to investment by mining companies for the development of supporting infrastructure and local economic development. The primary nodes of coastal settlement and economic activity are Alexander Bay and Port Nolloth (Richtersveld Local Municipality), Kleinzee (Nama Khoi Local Municipality), and Hondeklipbaai and Koiingnaas (Kamiesberg Local Municipality). At this moment we are not considering the towns of Alexander Bay and Kleinzee as part of the project because town proclamation is not finalised yet.

PROJECT DESCRIPTIONS

Buildings, cities, industries and appliances.

•Provision of rainwater harvesting tanks to indigent households in Koiingnaas and Hondeklip Bay

•Provision of Solar panels to indigent households in Koiingnaas, and Hondeklip Bay

•Convert existing municipal buildings to climate smart buildings by installing solar panels, rainwater harvesting tanks, and a greywater recycling system for the:

□Library, municipal buildings, and Caravan park in Hondeklip Bay

•Provide a fish cleaning area/facility at the Hondeklip Bay harbour

•Convert the current conservancy tank system at the Hondeklip Bay Caravan Park to a septic tank system in order to recycle partially purified sewage water.

Health, food, and water security

•The construction of a desalination plant, including training and skills transfer for:

□Hondeklip Bay

•Construction of slipways for the following Public Launching Sites:

□Hondeklip Bay (upgrading of existing slipway)

Livelihoods of people and communities

•Establish vegetable gardens and composting facilities in Hondeklip Bay

Ecosystems and ecosystems services

•Clearing off alien vegetation in the Buffels and Swartlintjies estuaries

Infrastructure and built environment

8.22 GENDERBASE VIOLENCE

To help communities around the world take on gender-based violence, the UN Foundation teamed up with the Spotlight Initiative to create the With Her Fund. From supporting Deaf women in Argentina to ending child marriage in Mali, the six organizations that comprise the inaugural cohort of grantees are proving that local organizations led by women are best suited to support survivors and challenge harmful social norms in their communities.

Gender-based violence (GBV) is a global public health emergency that has plagued girls and women throughout history. Defined as harmful acts directed at an individual based on their gender, GBV is a constant threat for girls and women around the world regardless of their age, race, or socioeconomic status. And they are at risk everywhere and anywhere — at work, at school, and at home.

This kind of targeted violence is rooted in systemic gender inequality and can be physical, sexual, economic, or psychological. It can look like a child undergoing female genital mutilation, a student assaulted in her dorm, or a stay-at-home mom restricted from accessing financial resources.

The statistics on GBV are bleak. The United Nations Office for the Coordination of Humanitarian Affairs estimates that 1 in 3 women worldwide will experience physical or sexual abuse in her lifetime. In 2020, the UN Office on Drugs and Crime found that, on average, a girl or woman is killed by someone in her own family every 11 minutes.

While GBV remains a universal plague for girls and women, their collective power to help one another and overcome cannot be overlooked.

GIRLS AND WOMEN ARE RESILIENT

In every corner of the world, groups led by women are organizing, listening to, and supporting survivors of GBV while tackling gender inequality in their own communities.

And in most cases, they're doing so with extremely limited resources. Because most grassroots organizations rely on volunteers and project-based funding, operational costs are rarely covered by donations or grants. This financial uncertainty ultimately endangers the sustainability and impact of this vital, lifesaving work. A recent report on global philanthropy and feminist movements found that only 1% of gender-focused international aid was directed to women's rights organizations. Further, most women's rights organizations have never received unrestricted or multiyear funding.

To address this dismal gap, the United Nations Foundation joined forces with the EU-led Spotlight Initiative to launch the WithHer Fund. A new funding vehicle, the WithHer Fund provides flexible grants to local, women-led organizations working to end GBV.

Meet the inaugural cohort of WithHer Fund grantees, from Argentina to Mali, that are challenging harmful social norms and creating spaces for GBV survivors to heal and access the resources they need and deserve.

SORDAS SIN VIOLENCIA (DEAF WOMEN WITHOUT VIOLENCE)

ARGENTINA



Presentation by Sordas Sin Violencia staff and UNFPA on a joint research piece titled "Accessible Comprehensive Health for Deaf Women: Lessons learned and challenges from the experience of Sordas Sin Violencia in a hospital in Buenos Aires." Photo: Sordas Sin Violencia

Sordas Sin Violencia (Deaf Women Without Violence) is a program co-led by Deaf and hearing women to provide assistance, emotional support, and access to resources for GBV survivors in the Deaf community across Argentina. Sabrina Grinschpun is a Deaf linguistic-intercultural mediator at Sordas Sin Violencia, which was founded by Ester Mancera, a trained psychologist with years of experience providing support to women in situations of high vulnerability.

As a Deaf woman, Sabrina understands more than most the barriers that GBV survivors in the Deaf community face in accessing support services.

"How can we ask for help, get advice, or ask for judicial intervention if there are no interpreting teams in Argentine Sign Language in public services? How can we learn about [GBV] if the campaigns for the prevention of violence and comprehensive sexual education are not specifically designed by and for the Deaf community?" said Sabrina Grinschpun, Deaf linguistic-intercultural mediator for Sordas Sin Violencia.

"How can we ask for help, get advice, or ask for judicial intervention if there are no interpreting teams in Argentine Sign Language in public services?"

Sabrina Grinschpun
Deaf linguistic-intercultural mediator, Sordas Sin Violencia

At Sordas Sin Violencia, Deaf mediators, LSA-Spanish interpreters, and hearing professionals form local assistance teams across Argentina's provinces to support survivors with everything from filing a complaint to testifying in court and finding health services. Through this outreach, Sordas Sin Violencia upholds the international Convention on the Rights of Persons with Disabilities.

FOUNDATION FOR CIVIC EDUCATION AND SOCIAL EMPOWERMENT

MALAWI



FOCESE's Advocacy Coordinator providing food items for a child survivor of GBV. Photo: FOCESE

The Foundation for Civic Education and Social Empowerment (FOCESE) is an advocacy organization run by young women that is focused on raising awareness about GBV and sexual

and reproductive health and rights (SRHR) among youths in Malawi's Balaka District. Though just 30 years old, Christie Banda serves as the Executive Director of the organization and brings a deep understanding of the community, having lived there throughout her life.

"Poverty in our communities is extreme, severe, and chronic. Most of the women have nothing to do to support their lives and as such they are easily abused by their husbands. … FOCESE undertakes various interventions aimed at creating a cadre of adolescent girls and women with knowledge and assertive skills who can ably negotiate and challenge the harmful practices that fuel GBV," said Christie Banda, Executive Director of FOCESE.

Among its many activities, FOCESE uses sport, song, and drama to challenge internalized sexism, build confidence and self-determination among girls, create positive social bonds within the community, and provide a platform for discussing SRHR and GBV. Since November 2021, the sporting project alone has reached more than 750 girls and 1,200 community members. Since providing awareness-raising activities, FOCESE has experienced an increase in demand for SRHR services, including voluntary family planning and post-abortion and GBV support by adolescent girls, young women, and marginalized communities.

NINA YOUNG WOMEN'S LEADERSHIP PROGRAMME

TRINIDAD & TOBAGO

NiNa Young Women's Leadership Programme supports young women who are transitioning from state care into independent living. A recent report commissioned by the Government of Trinidad and Tobago found that children in state-run facilities experience high levels of abuse and violence. Upon leaving state care, young women are more vulnerable to falling into abusive relationships or homelessness.

Akosua Dardaine Edwards, a gender and entrepreneurship specialist, created the NiNa programme to provide young vulnerable women with entrepreneurial, leadership, and confidence-building skills.

"I come from a strong line of women who supported each other. I believe that it is my responsibility to carry this legacy on. Young women [leaving state care] have dreams, ambitions, and visions for themselves. Our role is to be an incubator for that, to shine a light on the possibilities with love and in service," said Akosua Dardaine Edwards, Founder and National Coordinator of NiNa Young Women's Leadership Programme.

"Young women [leaving state care] have dreams, ambitions, and visions for themselves. Our role is to be an incubator for that, to shine a light on the possibilities with love and in service."

Akosua Dardaine Edwards
Founder and National Coordinator, NiNa Young Women's Leadership Programme

Led by certified coaches, NiNa's workshops holistically address critical themes in girls' lives, including spirituality, relationships, sexuality, and safety. Half of all young women who participate have experienced GBV, including sexual trauma. Through outdoor movement-based workshops, NiNa aims to empower and support participants as they reclaim ownership of their bodies and reconnect with the healing power of nature.

HAVEN HOUSE

BELIZE



Haven House President Dr. Sharmayne Saunders and a Board Member of PETAL (Promoting Empowerment Through Awareness for Les/Bi Women) with hygiene packages for shelter participants. Photo: Haven House

For over 20 years, Haven House has provided shelter and support services for approximately 1,200 female survivors of GBV and their children in Belize. The current President of Haven House, Sharmayne Saunders, grew up in the community she now serves — a community where GBV often remains a family secret and many cases go unreported. A 2020 report found that women make up 84% of domestic violence victims in Belize; the majority of these incidents occur within the home of either the victim or the perpetrator.

"We have the flexibility to act fast in emergency situations, which sometimes [is the difference] between us providing much-needed aid to a woman or her returning to the perpetrator. … This is only possible through the flexibility of the program to quickly transition the family to independent living, rather than waiting for a system which would normally take months to receive approval," said Sharmayne Saunders, Haven House President.

"We have the flexibility to act fast in emergency situations, which sometimes [is the difference] between us providing much-needed aid to a woman or her returning to the perpetrator."

Sharmayne Saunders
President, Haven House

Haven House offers rental assistance, grocery coupons, and medical care to women, as well as job skills training in crafts, sewing, and culinary arts. By providing a safe shelter, Haven House gives women an opportunity to rebuild their lives.

CEMUJER

EL SALVADOR



CEMUJER's Ima Guirola on news channel 'Noticiero Hechos' alongside other civil society leaders, including Yolanda Guirola from CLADEM and Walberto Tejeda from Centro Bartolomé de las Casas. Photo: CEMUJER

CEMUJER, El Salvador's first women's association, was founded by Alba América Guirola Zelaya in honor of her sister, who was assassinated for her work as an activist. Established in 1990, amid a civil war, CEMUJER has been committed to changing mindsets and behaviors toward a human rights-centered culture free from gender disparities.

"During these 32 years of tenacious dedication to the fight to end gender-based violence against women of all ages, our institution has been subjected to multiple threats and looting with the simple purpose of destabilizing and closing us down. However, nothing and no one has been able to humiliate and break us. We are stronger than ever, envisioning bright futures for our children," said Alba América Guirola Zelaya, Founder and Managing Director, CEMUJER.

Through a confidential helpline, a comprehensive care clinic, and national awareness-raising campaigns, CEMUJER supports female survivors and their children with psychological support and legal advice. CEMUJER also works with government institutions through dialogue, negotiation, and policy development to strengthen the rule of law and access to justice for girls and women in a country with one of the highest femicide rates in Latin America. The majority of these crimes are never prosecuted.

ONG TAGNÈ

MALI



Agnès Niaré, Executive Director of ONG Tagnè, hosting a talk on child marriage and GBV. Photo: ONG Tagnè

ONG Tagnè works to end female genital mutilation (FGM), child marriage, and all forms of GBV. A recent report by the UNICEF, the United Nations Children's Fund, estimates that nearly 8 million girls and women in Mali have undergone FGM. It also found that fewer than 1 in 5 girls and women in Mali think FGM should stop. Agnès Niaré has been the Executive Director of ONG Tagnè since it was established in 1998 in the community of Kati, where she was born and raised.

"In Mali, women — whether from the city or the countryside — very often gather around a tontine [a peer-to-peer savings circle and lever for women's economic empowerment]. This need to feel part of a community, to confide in one another, made us discover that we, without exception, had undergone FGM. The trauma of this operation stays with you for life. We talked about it without finding a way to stop this butchery in a society where women cannot express their opinion without risking being repudiated. It was my little sister who gave us the idea of creating an association," said Agnès Niaré, Executive Director of ONG Tagnè.

"This need to feel part of a community, to confide in one another, made us discover that we, without exception, had undergone FGM. The trauma of this operation stays with you for life."

Agnès Niaré
Executive Director of ONG Tagnè

ONG Tagnè develops awareness-raising strategies to discuss harmful practices like FGM and child marriage openly and inclusively within communities. At first, ONG Tagnè observed a categorical and almost automatic rejection of new ideas from the communities it served. But over time, it has been successful in Kolokani Cercle, in the Koulikoro Region, with 189 villages publicly committing to abandoning FGM and child marriage.

The WithHer Fund is built on a powerful, proven fact: Local organizations led by women are trusted within their communities, serve as first responders during times of crisis, and possess the contextual and cultural knowledge to assist GBV survivors appropriately and effectively.

As the UN Foundation's Vice President for Girls and Women Strategy, Michelle Milford Morse said: "There are extraordinary leaders behind each of these organizations who use every grant dollar with extraordinary compassion, resilience, and skill. Let's let them do their work!"

By providing these organizations with critical and flexible funding, we can build strong support systems, expand services, and pave a path free from violence for future generations of girls and women.

ABOUT THE WITHHER FUND

In partnership with the Spotlight Initiative, and as part of a commitment made during the Generation Equality Forum, the UN Foundation established the WithHer fund to provide flexible funds to local, high-impact, frontline, grassroots women's rights organizations who have been tackling gender-based violence (GBV)—particularly violence against women and girls (VAWG)—in their communities.

LEARN MORE

Gender-based violence in South Africa

Gender-based violence in South Africa – Understand





This introduction was kindly provided by the Sexual Violence Research Initiative and the Joint Gender Fund.
A special thank you to Elizabeth Dartnall and Ali Channon.

Related resources

Too costly to ignore – the economic impact of gender-based violence in SA - Report/Study
18 Sep 2014 KPMG Human and Social Services

Gender-based violence and the need for evidence-based primary prevention in South Africa - Article
01 Jan 2013 African Safety Promotion Journal

Guns and gender-based violence in South Africa - Article
01 Sep 2010 South African Medical Journal

Global Guidance on Addressing School-Related Gender-Based Violence - Guide/Manual
01 Jan 2016 UNESCO, UN-WOMEN

Content

- Introduction
- What is gender-based violence?
- GBV in South Africa
- What do we do?
  - Prevention and Response
  - Need to address underlying causes
  - Importance to develop evidence base
- References



Civil society organisations across the country formed the *National Strategic Plan on Gender-Based Violence* campaign, demanding a fully-costed, evidence-based, multi-sectoral, inclusive and comprehensive NSP to end GBV. [Photo: Alexa Sedgwick, Sonke Gender Justice]

Introduction

Gender-based violence (GBV) is a profound and widespread problem in South Africa, impacting on almost every aspect of life. GBV (which disproportionately affects women and girls) is systemic, and deeply entrenched in institutions, cultures and traditions in South Africa.

This introduction will explore what GBV is and some of the forms it takes, examine GBV in South Africa, and begin to explore what different actors are doing to respond to GBV.

What is gender-based violence?

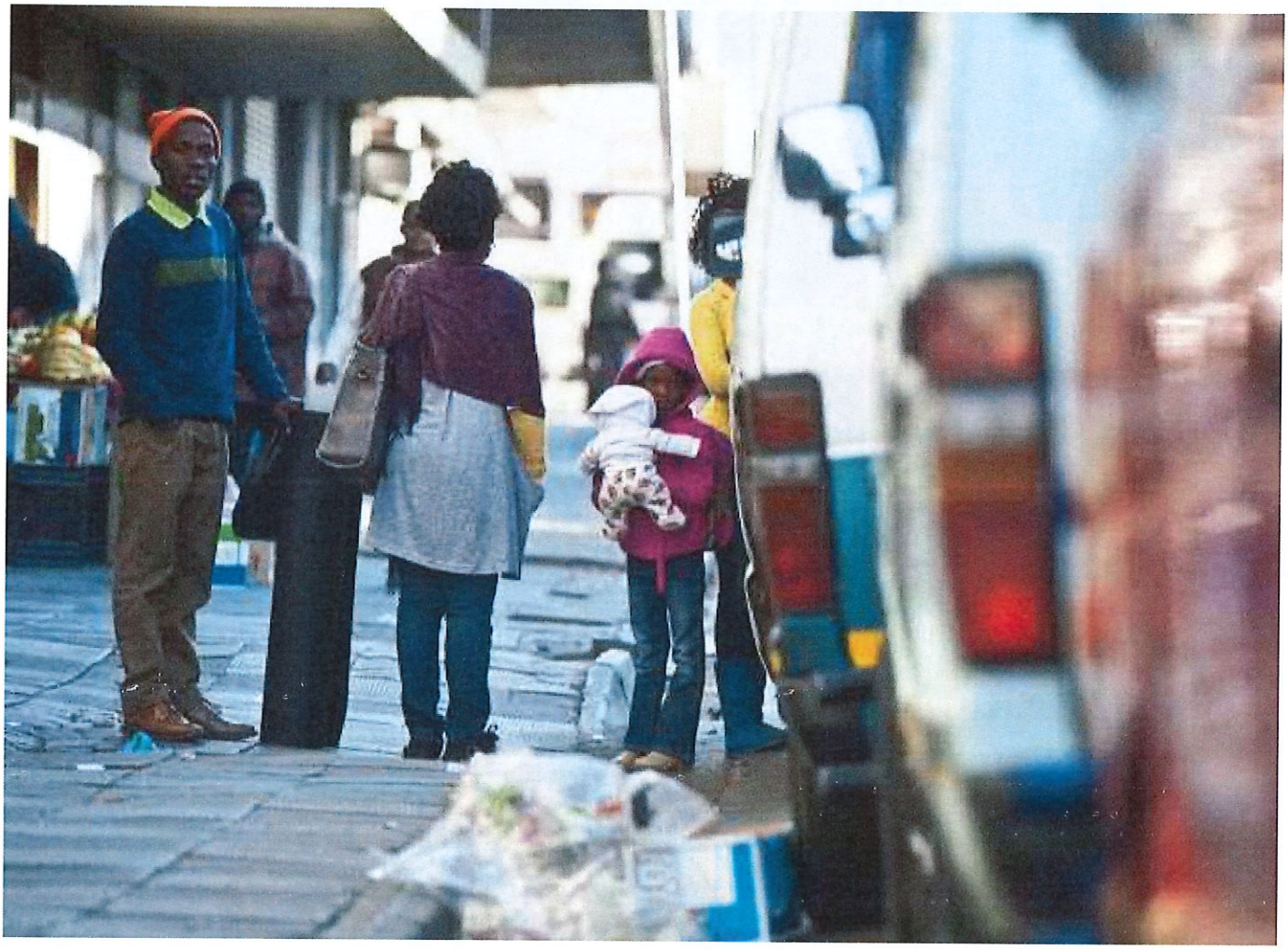
GBV occurs as a result of normative role expectations and unequal power relationships between genders in a society.

There are many different definitions of GBV, but it can be broadly defined as "the general term used to capture violence that occurs as a result of the normative role expectations associated with

each gender, along with the unequal power relationships between […] genders, within the context of a specific society." [1]

The expectations associated with different genders vary from society to society and over time. Patriarchal power structures dominate in many societies, in which male leadership is seen as the norm, and men hold the majority of power. Patriarchy is a social and political system that treats men as superior to women – where women cannot protect their bodies, meet their basic needs, participate fully in society and men perpetrate violence against women with impunity [2].

Forms of gender-based violence



There are many different forms of violence, which you can read more about here. All these types of violence can be – and almost always are – gendered in nature, because of how gendered power inequalities are entrenched in our society.

GBV can be physical, sexual, emotional, financial or structural, and can be perpetrated by intimate partners, acquaintances, strangers and institutions. Most acts of interpersonal gender-based violence are committed by men against women, and the man perpetrating the violence is often known by the woman, such as a partner or family member [3].

Violence against women and girls (VAWG)

GBV is disproportionately directed against women and girls [4]. For this reason, you may find that some definitions use GBV and VAWG interchangeably, and in this article, we focus mainly on VAWG.

Violence against LGBTI people

However, it is possible for people of all genders to be subject to GBV. For example, GBV is often experienced by people who are seen as not conforming to their assigned gender roles, such as lesbian, gay, bisexual, transgender and/or intersex people.

More information

For more information on intimate partner violence and domestic violence, read this WHO brief

Intimate partner violence (IPV)

IPV is the most common form of GBV and includes physical, sexual, and emotional abuse and controlling behaviours by a current or former intimate partner or spouse, and can occur in heterosexual or same-sex couples [5].

Domestic violence (DV)

Domestic violence refers to violence which is carried out by partners or family members. As such, DV can include IPV, but also encompasses violence against children or other family members.

Sexual violence (SV)

Sexual violence is "any sexual act, attempt to obtain a sexual act, unwanted sexual comments or advances, or acts to traffic, or otherwise directed, against a person's sexuality using coercion, by any person regardless of their relationship to the victim, in any setting, including but not limited to home and work." [6]

What is violence?

For more information on forms of violence, read our introduction on "What is violence?"

Indirect (structural) violence

Structural violence is "where violence is built into structures, appearing as unequal power relations and, consequently, as unequal opportunities.

Structural violence exists when certain groups, classes, genders or nationalities have privileged access to goods, resources and opportunities over others, and when this unequal advantage is built into the social, political and economic systems that govern their lives."

Because of the ways in which this violence is built into systems, political and social change is needed over time to identify and address structural violence.

GBV in South Africa

Societies free of GBV do not exist, and South Africa is no exception [7].

Although accurate statistics are difficult to obtain for many reasons (including the fact that most incidents of GBV are not reported [10]), it is evident South Africa has particularly high rates of GBV, including VAWG and violence against LGBT people.

Population-based surveys show very high levels of intimate partner violence (IPV) and non-partner sexual violence (SV) in particular, with IPV being the most common form of violence against women.

- Whilst people of all genders perpetrate and experience intimate partner and or sexual violence, men are most often the perpetrators and women and children the victims [7].
- More than half of all the women murdered (56%) in 2009 were killed by an intimate male partner [8].
- Between 25% and 40% of South African women have experienced sexual and/or physical IPV in their lifetime [9, 10].
- Just under 50% of women report having ever experienced emotional or economic abuse at the hands of their intimate partners in their lifetime [10].
- Prevalence estimates of rape in South Africa range between 12% and 28% of women ever reporting being raped in their lifetime [10-12].
- Between 28 and 37% of adult men report having raped a women [10, 13].
- Non-partner SV is particularly common, but reporting to police is very low. One study found that one in 13 women in Gauteng had reported non-partner rape, and only one in 25 rapes had been reported to the police [10].
- South Africa also faces a high prevalence of gang rape [14].
- Most men who rape do so for the first time as teenagers and almost all men who ever rape do so by their mid-20s [15].
- There is limited research into rape targeting women who have sex with women. One study across four Southern African countries, including South Africa, found that 31.1% of women reported having experienced forced sex [16].
- Male victims of rape are another under-studied group. One survey in KwaZulu-Natal and the Eastern Cape found that 9.6% of men reported having experienced sexual victimisation by another man [17].

Drivers of GBV

Drivers of GBV are the factors which lead to and perpetuate GBV. Ultimately, gendered power inequality rooted in patriarchy is the primary driver of GBV.

GBV (and IPV in particular) is more prevalent in societies where there is a culture of violence, and where male superiority is treated as the norm [18]. A belief in male superiority can manifest in men feeling entitled to sex with women, strict reinforcement of gender roles and hierarchy (and punishment of transgressions), women having low social value and power, and associating masculinity with control of women [18].

These factors interact with a number of drivers, such as social norms (which may be cultural or religious), low levels of women's empowerment, lack of social support, socio-economic inequality, and substance abuse.

In many cultures, men's violence against women is considered acceptable within certain settings or situations [18] - this social acceptability of violence makes it particularly challenging to address GBV effectively.

In South Africa in particular, GBV "pervades the political, economic and social structures of society and is driven by strongly patriarchal social norms and complex and intersectional power inequalities, including those of gender, race, class and sexuality." [19].

Impact of gender-based violence

GBV is a profound human rights violation with major social and developmental impacts for survivors of violence, as well as their families, communities and society more broadly.



On an individual level, GBV leads to psychological trauma, and can have psychological, behavioural and physical consequences for survivors. In many parts of the country, there is poor access to formal psychosocial or even medical support, which means that many survivors are

unable to access the help they need. Families and loved ones of survivors can also experience indirect trauma, and many do not know how to provide effective support.

Jewkes and colleagues outline the following impacts of GBV and violence for South Africa as a society more broadly [20]:

- South African health care facilities – an estimated 1.75 million people annually seek health care for injuries resulting from violence
- HIV – an estimated 16% of all HIV infections in women could be prevented if women did not experience domestic violence from their partners. Men who have been raped have a long term increased risk of acquiring HIV and are at risk of alcohol abuse, depression and suicide.
- Reproductive health - women who have been raped are at risk of unwanted pregnancy, HIV and other sexually transmitted infections.
- Mental health - over a third of women who have been raped develop post-traumatic stress disorder (PTSD), which if untreated persists in the long term and depression, suicidality and substance abuse are common. Men who have been raped are at risk of alcohol abuse, depression and suicide.

Violence also has significant economic consequences. The high rate of GBV places a heavy burden on the health and criminal justice systems, as well as rendering many survivors unable to work or otherwise move freely in society.

A 2014 study by KPMG also estimated that GBV, and in particular violence against women, cost the South African economy a minimum of between R28.4 billion and R42.4 billion, or between 0.9% and 1.3% of gross domestic product (GDP) in the year 2012/2013. [21]

What do we do?

South Africa is a signatory to a number of international treaties on GBV, and strong legislative framework, for example the Domestic Violence Act (DVA) (1998), the Sexual Offences Act (2007) and the Prevention and Combatting of Trafficking in Human Persons (2013) Act" [22].

Response services aim to support and help survivors of violence in a variety of ways. Prevention initiatives look at how GBV can be prevented from happening.

Whilst international treaties and legislation is important it is not enough to end GBV and strengthen responses.

Addressing GBV is a complex issue requiring multi-faceted responses and commitment from all stakeholders, including government, civil society and other citizens. There is growing recognition in South Africa of the magnitude and impact of GBV and of the need to strengthen the response across sectors.

Prevention and Response

What works

For more information, check the page What Works in preventing GBV

Broadly speaking, approaches to addressing GBV can be divided into **response** and **prevention**. Response services aim to support and help survivors of violence in a variety of ways (for instance medical help, psychosocial support, and shelter). Prevention initiatives look at how GBV can be prevented from happening. Response services can in turn contribute towards preventing violence from occurring or reoccurring.

Responses are important. Major strides are being made internationally on how to best respond and provide services for survivors of violence. WHO guidelines describe an appropriate health sector response to VAW – including providing post-rape care and training health professionals to provide these services [32].

WHO does not recommend routine case identification (or screening) in health services for VAW exposure, but stresses the importance of mental health services for victims of trauma.

Need to address underlying causes



Much of our effort in South Africa has been focused on response. However – our response efforts need to be supported and complemented by prevention programming and policy development. By addressing the underlying, interlinked causes of GBV, we can work towards preventing it from happening in the first place.

SACQ: Primary prevention

For more information on prevention programmes that work, have a look at the South African Crime Quarterly 54 on evidence-based primary prevention.

Violence prevention policies and programmes should be informed by the best evidence we have available. Programmes that are evidence based are [35]:

- built on what has been done before and has been found to be effective;
- informed by a theoretical model;
- guided by formative research and successful pilots; and
- multi-faceted and address several causal factors.

Several GBV prevention programmes which have support for effectiveness have been implemented in South Africa. A summary of the prevention programmes mentioned below can be found in the South African Crime Quarterly 51: Primary prevention (see table on pgs. 35-38):

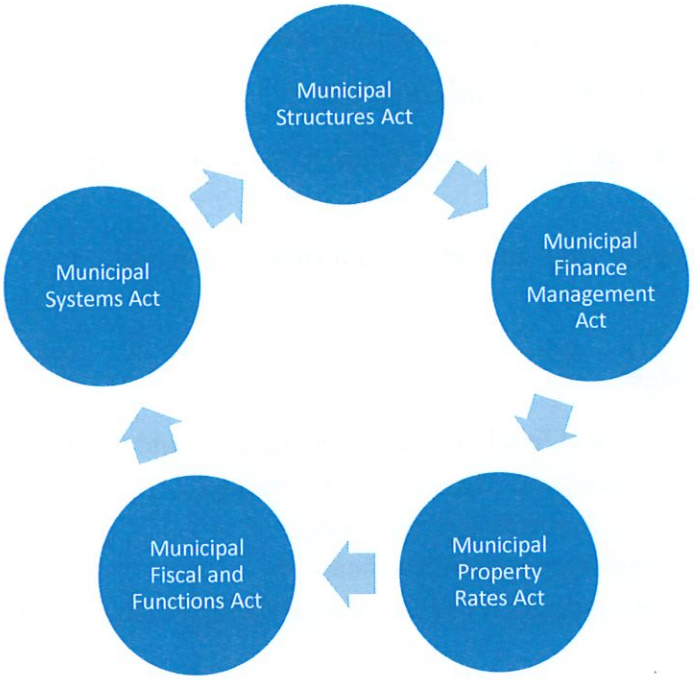
- **Thula Sana:** Promote mothers' engagement in sensitive, responsive interactions with their infants
- **The Sinovuyo Caring Families Programme:** Improve the parent–child relationship, emotional regulation, and positive behaviour management approaches
- **Prepare:** Reduce sexual risk behaviour and intimate partner violence, which contribute to the spread of sexually transmitted diseases (STIs)
- **Skhokho Supporting Success:** Prevent IPV among young teenagers
- **Stepping Stones:** Promote sexual health, improve psychological wellbeing and prevent HIV
- **Stepping Stones / Creating Futures:** Reduce HIV risk behaviour and victimisation and perpetration of different forms of IPV and strengthen livelihoods
- **IMAGE (Intervention with Microfinance for AIDS and Gender Equity):** Improve household economic wellbeing, social capital and empowerment and thus reduce vulnerability to IPV and HIV infection

Importance to develop evidence base

At the same time, it is important to develop the evidence base further by exploring a range of other interventions that have the potential to be effective in a South African context. Many

CHAPTER 9. FINANCIAL POLICIES

9.1 Legislative Overview



9.2 Roles and Responsibilities of Council and Administration

The roles and responsibilities of the Mayor and the Council are as follows:

Council: Review the performance of the municipal council, its committees and the administration.

The review will take place at a particularly strategic and high level and will be conducted annually in the form of a table report at the end of the financial year.

The mayor: Drive and Manage performance in the organization. Review performance quarterly

9.3 Budget Planning Process

ANNUAL BUDGET PREPERATION:

End of March: Table draft budget in Council.

April: Community participation process

End of May: Council approval of budget

Influence by community participation.

June: Advertise approved tariffs

July: Implement approved budget

August: Council approval of the budget preparation timetable.

August – November: Review and development of IDP

December / January: 3year high level capital budget proposal, budget related policies and funding and reserves policies.

January – March: Community input and setting of measurable objectives.

9.4 Role of Council in Budget

- Councilors provide a critical link between the community and the municipality.
- They approved the budgets processes and review policies.
- They review By–Laws e.g. enabling tariff settings.
- Approve the Budget and Budget related policies
- They monitored the implementation of the budget via reports to evaluate performance

9.5 Financial Plan

The Local Government Municipal Systems Act, Chapter 5, Section 26, prescribed the core components of the Integrated Development Plan (IDP). Section 26 (h) requires the inclusion of a financial plan, which should include a budget projection for at least the next three years. This Financial Plan aims to determine the financial affordability and sustainability levels of the Kamiesberg Municipality over the medium term.

9.5.1 Brief Summary of the Financial Plan.

- Revenue Raising Strategies: the primary revenue raising sources of the municipality is, other than grants and subsidies, are from the following sources:
  a) Property Rates
  b) Service Charges – water, sanitation, electricity, and refuse removal.
- The Objectives of our Credit Control and Debt Collection Policies are:

1) Focusing on all outstanding debt as raised on the debtor's account
2) Providing for a common credit control and debt collection policy.

- Asset and Liability Management Strategies
- Financial Management Strategies
- Operational Financing Strategies and Strategies which enhances Cost Effectiveness.

9.5.2 Key Budget Expenditure Items

- Budget expenditures for the 2024/2025 financial year are based on actual expenditure up to March 2024., projections, and the audit figures for 2023 for the rest of the financial year.
- A critical factor thar still threatens the financial sustainability of the municipality is the rising increase in the significant cost for the provision of electricity. NERSA's approval of Eskom tariffs remain significantly higher than inflation, with the estimates from the national treasury predicting an increase for the current budget year of 12.72%.
- R 16 364 000.00 is budget for the 2023 / 2024 financial year for the purchase of electricity. This is a budget increase of 18.49% in the cost of electricity.
- Personnel – related cost are budget at R 31 109 000.00. This is a decrease of 0.063% from the previous budget (R 33 223 000.00). These budget costs represent 30% of the total municipal expenses, which are in the norms set out by the National Treasury.

9.5.3 Capital Expenditure

- Total Capital Budget for 2024/2025

1.	MIG Projects:	R 8 129 000.00
2.	Financial System:	R 1 500 000.00
3.	Operational Capital:	R 400 000.00
4.	**TOTAL:**	**R 10 029 000.00**

9.5.4 Financial Management Grant

- National treasury allocated R 3 000 000.00 for the improvement of financial management reforms in the Municipality, the majority of which will be use for the appointment of interns and the capacitation of employees as well as the implementation of MSCOA as well as the new financial systems.

9.5.5. Services Tariffs

- Municipalities must strive to ensure that income projections are accurate, realistic and collectable. The prescribed growth by the National Treasury for 2024/2025 is used as a basis to stay within inflation and economic trends. All tariffs for the provision of services are increased by an average of 4.9% including water, waste removal and sewerage, as per Circular 123 of Nation Treasury. Electricity tariffs are increased by 12.72% as prescribed by Circular 123 but must still be approved by NERSA.

9.5.6 Free Basic Services

- Registered Household with a gross income of no more than R 5 000.00 per household per month qualify for a subsidy on services. They received 2 kl of water, 50kwh of electricity, free waste removal and 50% subsidized sewage services.

9.5.7 Consolidated Overview of the 2024/2025 MTREF

R Thousands	Budget Year2024/ 2025	2025/2026	2026/2027
TotalOperating Revenue	R 84 561 000.00	R 86 695 000.00	R 89 528 000.00
Total Operating Expenditure	R 107 034 000.00	R 109 276 000.00	R 114 239 000.00
Surplus (Deficit) for the year	(R 22 473 000.00)	(R 22 580 000.00)	(R 24 711 000.00)
Total Capital Expenditure	R 10 029 000.00	R 8 291 000.00	R 8 591 000.00

The total operating expenditure for the 2023/2024 financial year has been appropriated at R 104 465.000.00 and translate into neither a deficit nor a surplus, which mainly consist of non – cash items such as depreciation and debt impairment.

The Capital Budget for 2024/2025 is R 10 029 000.00

9.6 Legislative Mandate

Section 1 of the MFMA states that "budget related policy" means a policy of a municipality affecting or affected by the annual budget of the municipality including:

- the tariffs policy which the municipality must adopt in terms of section 74 of the Municipal Systems Act.

- the rates policy which the municipality must adopt in terms of legislation regulating municipal property rates.

- the credit control and debt collection policy which the municipality must adopt in terms of section 96 of the Municipal Systems Act.

9.8 GRAP Compliance

Our best measure of GRAP compliance comes from the audit opinion of the latest Annual Financial Statements for the year ended 30 June 2020. The opinion improved from a disclaimer of opinion in 2018/19 to a qualified audit opinion for the year ended 30 June 2020. An audit action plan has already been established and controls being put in place to ensure that further improvement is made during the next audit cycle.

9.9 MSCOA Compliance

The fundamental purpose of MSCOA is to ensure a seaming less integration on the financial system between all sectors within a municipality. Challenges are currently still being experienced in this regard due to limited system functionality.

9.10 Accountability and Good Governance

To achieve a culture of accountability, local governments need to be aware of areas where there is a lack of accountability.

An accountability audit assesses how local governments use public funds and resources.

It evaluates whether the government has proper controls in place to make sure employees aren't misusing resources. And it ensures that the government is following laws, regulations and internal policies and procedures.

For local government, core values such as integrity, equality, and transparency should provide the foundation for every decision and policy.

Good Governance is an approach to government that is committed to creating a system founded in justice and peace that protects individuals human rights and civil liberties.

Good Government is measured by the eight factors namely:

1. Participation
2. Rule of Law
3. Transparency
4. Responsiveness
5. Consensus Oriented
6. Equity and Inclusiveness
7. Effectiveness and Efficiency
8. Accountability

9.11 Asset Management Plan

As part of the financial sustainability strategy, an aggressive revenue management framework has is being designed to increase cash inflow, not only from current billings but also from debtors that are in arrears in excess of 90 days. The intention of the strategy is to streamline the revenue value chain by ensuring accurate billing, customer service, credit control and debt collection.

Management of assets: Asset management policy is being developed for approval by council

9.12 Budget Policies

Tariffs Policy	This is a mandatory policy in terms of the Municipal Systems Act and also a budget – related policy in terms of the definition of such policies in Section 1 of the MFMA.
Rates Policy	This is a mandatory policy in terms of the Municipal Property Rates Act. It is also a budget – related policy in terms of the definition of such policies in Section 1 of the MFMA.

Indigency Policy	This is a budget – related policy within the definition of such policies as provided in Section 1 of the MFMA.
Credit Control Policy	This is a mandatory policy in terms of Section 96 of the Municipal Systems Act and it is also a budget-related policy.
Unauthorized, Irregular, Fruitless and Wasteful Expenditure Policy	
Debt Write Off Policy	
Municipal Supply Chain Management Policy	
Asset Management Policy	
Fraud Prevention Plan	
Fraud Prevention and Whistle Blowing Policy	
Banking and Investment Policy	
Risk Management Committee Charter	
Risk Assessment Methodology	
Risk Management Policy	
Performance Management Policy Framework	
Reis en Verblyf Beleid	
Budget Policy	
Virement Policy	

9.13 Overview of alignment of annual budget with IDP

The Constitution mandates local government with the responsibility to exercise local developmental and cooperative governance. The eradication of imbalances in South African society can only be realized through a credible integrated developmental planning process.

Municipalities in South Africa need to utilise integrated development planning as a method to plan future development in their areas and so find the best solutions to achieve sound long-term development goals. A municipal IDP provides a five-year strategic programme of action aimed at setting short, medium and long term strategic and budget priorities to create a development platform, which correlates with the term of office of the political incumbents. The plan aligns the resources and the capacity of a municipality to its overall development aims and guides the municipal budget. An IDP is therefore a key instrument which municipalities use to provide vision, leadership and direction to all those that have a role to play in the development of a municipal area. The IDP enables municipalities to make the best use of scarce resources and speed up service delivery.

Integrated developmental planning in the South African context is amongst others, an approach to planning aimed at involving the municipality and the community to jointly find the best solutions towards sustainable development. Furthermore, integrated development planning provides a strategic environment for managing and guiding all planning, development and decision making in the municipality.

It is important that the IDP developed by municipalities correlate with National and Provincial intent. It must aim to co-ordinate the work of local and other spheres of government in a coherent plan to improve the quality of life for all the people living in that area. Applied to the Municipality, issues of national and provincial importance should be reflected in the IDP of the municipality. A clear understanding of such intent is therefore imperative to ensure that the Municipality strategically complies with the key national and provincial priorities.

The aim of this revision cycle was to develop and coordinate a coherent plan to improve the quality of life for all the people living in the area, also reflecting issues of national and provincial importance. One of the key objectives is therefore to ensure that there exists alignment between national and provincial priorities, policies and strategies and the Municipality response to these requirements.

The national and provincial priorities, policies and strategies of importance include amongst others:

- Green Paper on National Strategic Planning of 2009;
- Government Programme of Action;
- Development Facilitation Act of 1995;
- Provincial Growth and Development Strategy (GGDS);
- National and Provincial spatial development perspectives;
- Relevant sector plans such as transportation, legislation and policy;
- National Key Performance Indicators (NKPIs);
- Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative (ASGISA);

- National 2014 Vision;
- National Spatial Development Perspective (NSDP) and
- The National Priority Outcomes.

The Constitution requires local government to relate its management, budgeting and planning functions to its objectives. This gives a clear indication of the intended purposes of municipal integrated development planning. Legislation stipulates clearly that a municipality must not only give effect to its IDP, but must also conduct its affairs in a manner which is consistent with its IDP.

In order to ensure integrated and focused service delivery between all spheres of government it was important for the Municipality to align its budget priorities with that of national and provincial government. All spheres of government place a high priority on infrastructure development, economic development and job creation, efficient service delivery, poverty alleviation and building sound institutional arrangements.

Local priorities were identified as part of the IDP review process which is directly aligned to that of the national and provincial priorities. The key performance areas can be summarised as follows against the five strategic objectives:

1. Provision of quality basic services and infrastructure which includes, amongst others:
    - Provide electricity;
    - Provide water;
    - Provide sanitation;
    - Provide waste removal;
    - Provide housing;
    - Provide roads and storm water;
    - Maintaining the infrastructure of the Municipality.

2. Economic growth and development that leads to sustainable job creation by:
    - Ensuring the is a clear structural plan for the Municipality;

- Ensuring planning processes function in accordance with set timeframes;
- Facilitating the use of labour-intensive approaches in the delivery of services and the building of infrastructure.

3.1 Fight poverty and build clean, healthy, safe and sustainable communities:

- Effective implementation of the Indigent Policy;
- Working with the provincial department of health to provide primary health care services;
- Extending waste removal services and ensuring effective cleansing;
- Ensuring all waste water treatment works are operating optimally;
- Working with strategic partners such as SAPS to address crime;
- Ensuring save working environments by effective enforcement of building and health regulations;
- Promote viable, sustainable communities through proper zoning; and
- Promote environmental sustainability by protecting wetlands and key open spaces.

3.2 Integrated Social Services for empowered and sustainable communities

- Work with provincial departments to ensure the development of community infrastructure such as schools and clinics is properly co-ordinated with the informal settlements upgrade programme

4. Foster participatory democracy and Batho Pele principles through a caring, accessible and accountable service by:

- Optimising effective community participation in the ward committee system; and
- Implementing Batho Pele in the revenue management strategy.

5.1 Promote sound governance through:

- Publishing the outcomes of all tender processes on the municipal website

5.2 Ensure financial sustainability through:

- Reviewing the use of contracted services
- Continuing to implement the infrastructure renewal strategy and the repairs and maintenance plan

5.3 Optimal institutional transformation to ensure capacity to achieve set objectives

- Review of the organizational structure to optimize the use of personnel;

In line with the MSA, the IDP constitutes a single, inclusive strategic plan for the Municipality. The five-year programme responds to the development challenges and opportunities faced by the Municipality by identifying the key performance areas to achieve the five the strategic objectives mentioned above.

In addition to the five-year IDP, the Municipality undertakes an extensive planning and developmental strategy. This process is aimed at influencing the development path by proposing a substantial programme of public-led investment to restructure current patterns of settlement, activity and access to resources in the Municipality so as to promote greater equity and enhanced opportunity. The strategy specifically targets future developmental opportunities in traditional dormitory settlements. It provides direction to the Municipalities IDP, associated sectoral plans and strategies, and the allocation of resources of the Municipality and other service delivery partners.

Lessons learned with previous IDP revision and planning cycles as well as changing environments were taken into consideration in the compilation of the fourth revised IDP, including:

- Strengthening the analysis and strategic planning processes of the Municipality;
- Involve the communities in the analysis and planning processes. More emphasis was placed on area-based interventions, within the overall holistic framework;
- Ensuring better coordination through a programmatic approach and attempting to focus the budgeting process through planning interventions; and

- Strengthening performance management and monitoring systems in ensuring the objectives and deliverables are achieved.

The IDP revision process is underway the public participation process has been concluded and needs have been identified by the community members. As soon as the IDP has been completed the compilation of the SDBIP will take place.

The Final Budget of the Municipality is aligned with the IDP and SDBIP, currently it is only the capital projects that are stated as funded in the IDP that are aligned to the Capital Budget as per A5 of the schedules. Most of the projects as mentioned in the IDP are funded by donor departments therefore it won't form part of the budget of the municipality.

Overview of budget related-policies

Draft policies have been reviewed and tabled with the draft budget. The following have been tabled: Indigent Management policy, Debt and Collection Policy, Banking and Investment Policy, Debt Write-off Policy; Rates Policy; Tariffs Policy and the Municipal Supply Chain Management Policy. The policies as mentioned are those policies that were amended to accommodate the tariff increases as well as the upward shifting on the amounts to qualify for an indigent.

Overview of budget assumptions

External factors

Owing to the economic slowdown, financial resources are limited due to reduced payment levels by consumers. This has resulted in declining cash inflows, which has necessitated restrained expenditure to ensure that cash outflows remain within the affordability parameters of the Municipalities finances.

General inflation outlook and its impact on the municipal activities

There are four key factors that have been taken into consideration in the compilation of the 2022/23 MTREF:

- National Government macro-economic targets;
- The general inflationary outlook and the impact on Municipalities residents and businesses;
- The impact of municipal cost drivers;
- The increase in prices for bulk electricity and water; and

Collection rate for revenue services

The base assumption is that tariff and rating increases will increase at a rate slightly higher that CPI over the long term. It is also assumed that current economic conditions, and relatively controlled inflationary conditions, will continue for the forecasted term.

The performance of arrear collections will however only be considered a source of additional cash in-flow once the performance has been carefully monitored.

Growth or decline in tax base of the municipality

Debtors revenue is assumed to increase at a rate that is influenced by the consumer debtor's collection rate, tariff/rate pricing, real growth rate of the Municipality, household formation growth rate and the poor household change rate.

Household formation is the key factor in measuring municipal revenue and expenditure growth, as servicing 'households' is a greater municipal service factor than servicing individuals. Household formation rates are assumed to convert to household dwellings. In addition, the change in the number of poor households influences the net revenue benefit derived from household formation growth, as it assumes that the same costs incurred for servicing the household exist, but that no consumer revenue is derived as the 'poor household' limits consumption to the level of free basic services.

Salary increases

The *Salary and Wage Collective Agreement is* for the period 01 July 2021 to 31 June 2024 and the new agreement is still in progress.

Impact of national, provincial and local policies

Integration of service delivery between national, provincial and local government is critical to ensure focussed service delivery and, in this regard, various measures were implemented to align IDPs, provincial and national strategies around priority spatial interventions. In this regard, the following national priorities form the basis of all integration initiatives:

- Creating jobs;
- Enhancing education and skill development;
- Improving Health services;
- Rural development and agriculture; and
- Fighting crime and corruption.

To achieve these priorities integration mechanisms are in place to ensure integrated planning and execution of various development programs. The focus will be to strengthen the link between policy priorities and expenditure thereby ensuring the achievement of the national, provincial and local objectives.

Ability of the municipality to spend and deliver on the programmes

It is estimated that a spending rate of at least 95 per cent is achieved on operating expenditure and 98 per cent on the capital programme for the 2024/25 MTREF of which performance has been factored into the cash flow budget.

Cash Flow Management

Cash flow management and forecasting is a critical step in determining if the budget is funded over the medium-term. The table below is consistent with international standards of good financial management practice and also improves understandability for councillors and management. Some specific features include:

- Clear separation of receipts and payments within each cash flow category;
- Clear separation of capital and operating receipts from government, which also enables cash from 'Ratepayers and other' is determine by a collection rate of 68% for the 2024/25.
- Separation of borrowing and loan repayments (no set-off), to assist with MFMA compliance assessment regarding the use of long term borrowing (debt).

Legislation compliance status

Compliance with the MFMA implementation requirements have been substantially adhered to through the following activities:

1. In year reporting

Reporting to National Treasury in electronic format was fully complied with on a monthly basis. Section 71 reporting to the Executive Mayor (within 10 working days) has progressively improved and includes monthly published financial performance on the website.

2. Internship programme

The Municipality is participating in the Municipal Financial Management Internship programme and has employed interns undergoing training in various divisions of the Financial Services Department.

3. Budget and Treasury Office

The Budget and Treasury Office has been established in accordance with the MFMA.

4. Audit Committee

The Municipality forms part of the shared service model with the District Municipality for an Audit Committee.

5. Service Delivery and Implementation Plan

The detail SDBIP document is at a draft stage and will be finalised after approval of the 2023/24 MTREF directly aligned and informed by the 2023/24 MTREF.

6. Annual Report

Annual report is compiled in terms of the MFMA and National Treasury requirements.

7. MFMA Training

The MFMA training module in electronic format is presented at the Municipalities internal centre and training is ongoing.

8. Policies

An amendment of the Municipal Property Rates Regulations as published in Government Notice 363 of 27 March 2009, was announced in Government Gazette 33016 on 12 March 2010. The ratios as prescribed in the Regulations have been complied with.

CHAPTER 10. PERFORMANCE MANAGEMENT

10.1 Purpose

The performance of an organization is integrally linked to the staff. If employees do not perform an organisation will fail. It is therefore important to manage both the organizational an individual performance at the same time. The relationship between organizational performance and employee performance starts from planning, implementation, monitoring and review. All the phases in the organizational performance apply to management of individual performance. The monitoring system using monthly, bi – monthly and quarterly reports is informed by individual activities at sectional and departmental levels. However individual performance differ from organizational review.

10.2 The Constitution of South Africa. (Act 108 of 1996)

The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa , Act 108 of 1996 , Section 152 clearly states that:

- Dealing with the objectives of Local Government, paves the way for performance Management with the requirement for an " accountable government".
- The democratic values and principles in terms of Section 195(1) are also linked with the concept of performance management , with reference to the principles of, inter alia,
- The promotion of efficient, economic and effective use of resources, accountable public administration, to be transparent by providing information,
- To be responsive to the needs of the community, and to facilitate a culture of public service and accountability amongst staff.

10.3 Municipal Systems Act, 2000 (Act 32 of 2000)

The major PMS policy instruments is the is the 1998 White Paper on Local Government supported by the Batho Pele principles , which policies was given legal status through the adoption of the Municipal Systems Act in 2000 (Act 32 of 2000).

Chapter 6 of the Municipal systems Act (2000) provides briefly that a municipality must:

- Develop a Performance Management System;
- Promote a performance culture;
- Administers its affairs in an economical, effective, efficient and accountable manner;
- Set Key Performance Indicators (KPI's) as a yardstick for measuring performance;
- Set targets and monitor and review the performance of the municipality based on indicators linked to their IDP;
- Monitor, measure and review performance at least once per year;
- Take steps to improve performance;
- Report on performance to relevant stakeholders;
- Publish an annual performance report on performance of the municipality forming part of its annual report as per the Local Government: Municipal Finance management Act, 2003;
- Incorporate and report on a set of general (sometimes also referred to as national) indicators prescribed by the Minister responsible for Local Government;
- Conduct on a continuous basis an internal audit of all performance measures;
- Have their annual performance report audited by the Auditor – General; and
- Involve the community in setting indicators and targets and reviewing municipal performance.

10.4 Municipal Planning and Performance Regulations

The Municipal Planning and Performance Management Regulation set out in detail requirements for Municipal Performance Management Systems. Each component of the proposed framework in this document is strongly informed by the Regulations. In summary the Regulations provide that a municipality's PMS must:

1. Entail a framework that describes and represent s how the municipality's cycle and process of performance management, including measurement, review, reporting and improvement, will be conducted;
2. Comply with the requirements of the Systems Act;
3. Relate to the municipality's employee performance management processes and be linked to the municipality's IDP; and that:
4. A municipality must:

- The setting of performance measures (indicators) and the involvement of communities in this,
- The setting of performance targets for each of the measures,
- Annually review its KPI's as part of the performance review process
- Monitoring, measurement and evaluation of performance;
- Report on performance to Council at least twice a year;
- Internal auditing of performance measurement;
- Community participation in respect of performance management

5. Furthermore, Section 43 of the System Act authorises the Minister to prescribe general KPIs that every municipality must report on. Regulation 5(1) mentions the following general KPIs:

- The percentage of households with access to basic level of water, sanitation, electricity and solid waste removal.
- The percentage of households earning less than R 4000.00 per month with access to free basic services.
- The percentage of the Municipality's capital budget actually spent on capital projects in terms of the IDP.
- The number of local jobs created through the Municipality's economic development initiatives, including capital projects.

10.5 Regulations for Municipal Managers and Managers reporting to MM

The regulations seek to set out how the performance of Municipal Managers and Section 56 Managers directly accountable to Municipal Managers will be uniformly directed, monitored and improved. The regulations include the following:

- Chapter 2 deals with the requirements and provisions of the employment contracts;
- Chapter 3 deals with the performance agreements, which must include prescribes Key Performance Areas and Core Competency Requirements.
- Chapter 4 deals with the content of a job description for Municipal Managers.

10.6 Municipal Finance Management Act. No 56 of 2003

The Municipal Finance Management Act, 2003 links financial management and the IDP in no uncertain terms, for example:

Section 17 – Contents of Annual Budgets and Supporting Documents.

An Annual Budget, when it is tabled in Council for approval, must be accompanied by measurable performance objectives for revenue from each source and for each vote in the budget, taking in account the Municipalities IDP.

Section 24 – Approval of Annual Budgets.

An Annual Budget must be approved together with the adoption of resolutions approving above mentioned performance objectives.

Section 53 – Budget Process and related Matters

The Municipalities Service and Delivery and Budget Implementation Plan (SDBIP) must include service delivery targets and performance measures for each quarter. The annual performance agreements must be linked to the measurable performance objectives approved with the budget and to the SDBIP.

Section 72 – Mid – Year Budget and Performance assessment

There must be a mid – budget and performance assessment in January of each year.

The Municipal Systems Act and the Municipal Financial Management Act required that the PMS be reviewed annually in order to align it with the reviewed Integrated development Plan (IDP). As a direct consequence of the reviewed organizational performance management system it then becomes necessary to also amend the scorecards of the municipal manager and section 57 managers in line with the cascading effect of performance management from the organisational to the departmental and eventually to the employee level.

10.7 Batho Pele Principles

An important perspective in the management of the performance of a Municipality is its relationship with its customers, namely, local citizens and partners. The Batho – Pele White Paper (1998) provides an approach to building a culture and practice of customer service that is responsive to the needs of citizens and business as consumers and end – users of municipal services. For this to happen, even with the context of limited resources at the disposal of municipalities, everyone in the public service needs to do so with a high degree of commitment and sense of duty, through living the Batho – Pele principles.

Eight Batho – Pele principles were develop to serve as acceptable policy and legislative framework of service delivery in the service.

(1) **Consultation**. Citizens should be consulted about the level and Quality of public service they receive, and where possible, should be given a choice about the service that are provided.
(2) **Service standards:** Citizens should know what standard of service to expect.
(3) **Access**: All citizens should have equal access to the service to which they are entitled.
(4) **Courtesy**: Citizens should be treated with courtesy and consideration.
(5) **Information**: Citizens should be given full and accurate information about the public services they are entitled to receive.
(6) **Openness and Transparency:** Citizens should know how departments are run, how resources are spent, and who is in charge of particular services.
(7) **Redress**: If the promised standard of service is not delivered, citizen should be offered an apology, a full explanation and a speedy and effective remedy; and when complaints are made, citizens should receive a sympathetic , positive response.
(8) **Value – for – Money**: Public services should be provide economically and efficiently in order to give citizens the best possible value – for – money.

"Importantly, the Batho – Pele White Paper notes that the development of a service – orientated culture requires the active participation of the wider community. Municipalities need constant feedback from service – users if they are to improve their operations. Local partners can be mobilised to assist in building a service culture".

10.8 Objectives of the Performance Management Framework

The objectives of institutionalising a Performance Management System, beyond the fulfilling of legislative requirements, is to serve as a primary mechanism to monitor, review and improve the implementation of the municipality's IDP. In doing so, it should fulfil the following functions:

- Promoting accountability
- Decision – making and resource allocation
- Guiding development of municipal capacity – building programmes
- Creating a culture for best practice, shared – learning within the municipality
- Develop meaningful intervention mechanisms and early warning systems
- Create pressure for change at various levels
- Contribute to the overall development of the Local Government System

The Performance Management System identifies major or systematic blockages on time, ensures accountability between the residents, the political leadership and the administration of the Municipality and provide early warning signals so that corrective action can be taken on a regular basis.

10.9 Delegations of Responsibilities

WHEREAS section 160(1) (a) of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996 (Act No. 108 of 1996) empowers the Council to make decisions concerning the exercise of all the power and the performance of all the functions of the municipality;

and

WHEREAS section 160 (6)(c) of the Constitution, 1996 empowers the Council to make by-laws which prescribe rules and orders for the establishment, composition, procedure, powers and functions of its committees;

and

WHEREAS section 160(2) of the Constitution, 1996 prohibits Council from delegating:

(a) The passing of by-laws;
(b) The approval of budgets;
(c) The imposition of rates and other taxes, levies and duties; and
(d) The raising of loans

and

WHEREAS the Council must develop a system of delegation that will maximise administrative and operational efficiency and provide for adequate checks and balances, and in accordance with such a system of delegation, may delegate appropriate powers in accordance with the provisions and requirements of Part 3 of the Local Government Municipal Systems Act, 2000 (Act No. 32 of 2000);

1. POWERS OF THE MUNICIPALITY

[1] The Municipality has all the powers assigned to it in terms of the Constitution as well as national and provincial legislation. The Municipality has the right to do anything reasonably necessary for or incidental to the effective exercise of its powers.

The executive and legislative authority of the Municipality vests in the Council. The Council takes all the decisions of the Municipality except-

(a) Decisions on those matters that it has delegated to a delegated body
(b) Decisions on those matters that by law have been assigned to a political structure, political office-bearer or employee of the council, or a committee.

The Council may exercise executive and legislative authority within its Municipal area only. The Council may, by written agreement with another Municipality, exercise executive authority in the area of that other Municipality.

3. OBJECTIVES OF DELEGATION

The objectives of this system are the following:

(a) To ensure maximum administrative and operational efficiency.
(b) To provide for adequate checks and balances;
(c) To delegate decision-making to the most effective level within the administration;
(d) To involve employees in management decisions as far as practicable;
(e) To promote a sense of collective responsibility for performance;
(f) To assign clear duties for the management and co-ordination of administrative components, systems and mechanisms;
(g) To define the duties of each political structure and political office-bearer and
(h) To determine the relationships amongst the political structures, political office-bearers and the administration, and the appropriate lines of accountability and reporting for each of them.

10.10 Relationship between the IDP and PMS

Planning for performance means developing and reviewing the IDP annually in preparation for continuous implementation. The IDP process and the Performance Management process are integrated. Integrated development planning fulfils the planning phase of performance management. Performance Management on the other hand fulfils the implementation management, monitoring and evaluation of the IDP process.

10.11 Performance Monitoring

Performance monitoring is an ongoing process throughout the year and will run parallel to the implementation of the IDP. Monitoring will be conducted within each department and evidence of performance will be gathered, stored by each department and presented to substantiate claims of meeting performance standards or not meeting performance standards. Each Head of Department must allocate responsibility in their offices for information management, as these performance information files must be separate from normal registry filing. The performance information will be filled according to key performance areas and key performance indicators and will be regarded as portfolio of evidence.

Roles and Responsibilities of stakeholders for monitoring and measuring are as follows:

Stakeholders	Roles and Responsibilities
Senior officers	- Will be responsible for monitoring and reporting on each indicator in their departmental scorecards. - Will monitor performance those under their direct supervision under their functional areas and, - Report as per indicator been set to measure functional area. - Monitor on a daily basis. - Are responsible for compiling section reports on each indicator and - Collect the relevant data related to each project and indicator and facilitate proper storage of the data files. - Responsible for collecting this information in preparation for submission of performance reports to Heads of Departments.
Management Team	- Will receive progress reports on progress into the implementation of the departmental scorecards from senior officers on a bi – monthly basis and will be discussed at Management Meetings.
The Mayor	- Monitor if targets are achieving, and where not - Put proper corrective strategies in place to keep to timelines set for achieving each indicator and targets.
Municipal Council	- Performance reports should be submitted to council twice a year. (A mid – term report and an annual report are the two reports.)

CHAPTER 11: CLIMATE CHANGE

11.1 Impact of Climate Change

The plan was developed through the Local Government Climate Change Support programmed with support from the Department of Environmental Affairs (DEA).

Through this programme key climate change vulnerable indicators were identified. These indicators where Namakwa District Municipality may be at risk to the impacts of climate change.

No	Theme	Indicator Title	Exposure Answer	Sensitivity Answer	Adaptive Capacity Answer
1	Agriculture	Change in fruit production	Yes	High	Low
2	Agriculture	Increased risk to livestock	Yes	High	Low
3	Biodiversity and Environment	Loss of high priority biomes	Yes	High	Low
4	Coastal & Marine	Impacts on Marine and Benthic Ecosystems	Yes	High	Low
5	Coastal & Marine	Loss of land due to sea level rise	Yes	High	Low
6	Coastal & Marine	Increased damage to property from sea level rise	Yes	High	Low
7	Human Health	Increase heat stress	Yes	High	Low
8	Human Settlements	Increase isolation of rural communities	Yes	High	Low
9	Human Settlements	Increase migration urban and peri – urban areas	Yes	High	Low
10	Human Settlements	Decrease income from tourism	Yes	High	Low
11	Water	Decrease quality of drinking water	Yes	High	Low

11.2 Impact of Climate Change on Agriculture

Changes in climate are predicted to result in the shifting of bioregions across South Africa. It is forecast that under different climate scenarios that the District Municipal area will get hotter and drier leading to a loss of Nama – Karoo and Fynbos biomes and an increase of the Desert biome, this change will lead to the consequent shift in related ecosystems and vegetation.

Climate Change is predicted to negatively impact on the agricultural sector in the Namakwa District Municipality. Increased temperatures, drought and increase in frequency and severity of storm events will impact on the crops that can be grown and potentially result in loss of livestock.

The following key agricultural indicators, sub projects and actions were identified for inclusion in the Service Delivery and Budget Implementation Plan (SDBIP).

3.35.2.1 Sub – Project: Increased risk to livestock

- Conduct educational awareness campaigns in collaboration with Conservation South Africa, Surplus Peoples Project and the Environmental Monitoring Group focussing on the carrying capacity of land in rural areas.
- Develop incentive for small scale farmers to promote sustainable land management
- Educate small scale farmers on best farming practices
- Implement communal rotation grazing

11.3 Impact of Climate Change on Biodiversity and Environment

Changes in climate are predicted to result in the shifting of bioregions across South Africa. It is forecast that under different climate scenarios that the District Municipal area will get hotter and drier leading to a loss of Nama – Karoo and Fynbos biomes and an increase of the Desert biome, this change will lead to the consequent shift in related ecosystems and vegetation.

11.4 Manage the Loss of High Priority Biomes

1. Conduct community engagements in collaboration with Conservation South Africa to promote participatory planning in farming communities.

2. Develop natural resource management programs such as grazing and wetland rehabilitation programs in collaboration with Conservation South Africa.

3. Commission research aimed at collecting and documenting traditional knowledge on the loss of biomes in the district.

4. Organize exchange visits for communities living i traditional modelling and promote exchange of knowledge to younger generations, in collaboration with Conservation South Africa.

5. Investigate options of biodiversity offsetting for industries in the district through the consideration and purchase of land to replace lost vegetation types and declare the land as a conservation area.

11.5 Coastal and Marine Environment

Changes in climate change such as variable rainfall patterns, drying trends and expected temperature increases will negatively impact on the district's marine and aquatic systems. The district is likely to experience frequent and more intense extreme weather events such as droughts and storms. Rising sea levels will pose a potential risk to small coastal communities, while warming seas may impact on fishing communities as water temperatures may not be suitable for the current catch.

11.6 Manage Impact on Marine and Benthic Ecosystems

1. Identify and conserve coastal areas that are rich in biodiversity.

2. Develop a research project in collaboration with SANBI, aimed at providing environmental feedback to coastal communities.

3. Conduct research which seeks to understand the impacts of mining and how climate change exacerbates the industries impact.

11.7 Manage Loss of Land due to Sea Level Rise

Educate communities on dangers of living in high water mark areas, in collaborations with Department of Environmental Affairs and Department of Environment & Nature Conservation.

2. Ensure climate change is incorporated in the Disaster Management Plan.

3. Develop short term emergency response plans for evacuation of communities.

4. Revise the Spatial Development Framework to recognize areas where communities should or should not settle.

5. Develop a long-term relocation plan for communities residing in vulnerable areas.

6. Reinforce the Coastal Management Act through the Disaster Management and Infrastructure Departments.

11.8 Manage Increased Damage to Property from Sea Level Rise

1. Educate communities of danger of living in high water mark areas, in collaboration with Department of Environmental Affairs and Department of Environment and Nature Conservation.

2. Revise the Spatial Development Framework.

3. Reinforce the Coastal Management Act through the Disaster Management and Infrastructure Departments.

11.9. NERSA (VAALPUTS)

Vaalputs, situated in the western portion of the Kamiesberg Municipality, is the National Radioactive Waste Disposal facility, manage by the South African Nuclear Energy Corporation (NERSA) on behalf of the South African Government, and has been receiving Low and Medium level nuclear waste from Eskom Koeberg nuclear power plant near Cape Town since 1986. Vaalputs covers an area of about 10 000ha, measuring 16 km from east to west and 6.5 km from north to south at its narrowest point. Approximately 500 – 1000 ha will be occupied by the sites being develop for low – and – intermediate – level waste, an interim spent fuel storage facility, housing, roads, power lines and airstrip.

The guiding principle with low and intermediate waste is to contain the emitting material in an appropriate container, which should be placed in a geological formation to trap any material that escape through leakage. The hazards to health associated with a well – managed depository are actually very low. High level waste (Essentially spend nuclear fuel) emits a great deal of heat and requires special treatment; but this at present is not within the Vaalput's brief: Koeberg high level waste is currently store on site.

The site was chosen by the Atomic Energy Board, taking into account the rainfall, rate of flow of underground water from the site, earthquake risk, mining potential, agricultural potential, population density in the vicinity, permeability of the under - lying strata and their susceptibility to corrosion. The board acquire Vaalputs, some 1000 ha, large enough to receive all possible low and intermediate level nuclear waste from as many as five nuclear power plants the size of Koeberg over their possible life time. It is located in one of the driest and least densely populated parts of the country.

The site is underlain generally by clay (a layer of 15 – 25 m), a suitably impermeable geological formation. This is important as back – up in nuclear waste disposal. Low level waste is packed in steel drums, but the site planning allows for the inevitable deterioration of the drums through rust. However, at a correctly chosen site, all radio activities will be safely contained even in the event of leakages of containers for intermediate level waste.

The safety system is further reinforced by a variety of monitoring procedures. A watch is kept on such aspects as ground water. Nuclear Liabilities Management maintains borehole in and around

the area. The presence of radioactive isotopes would be a warning sign of the movement of radioactive material. The air above the site is also monitored as is the rock under the storage trenches and even the vegetation growing on the site. Remote handling of material is unnecessary with low and intermediate level waste. Operators must however, wear protective clothing and have their health monitored at suitable intervals. It is additional inherent in the phenomenon of radioactivity that it declines overtime. Considering the mix of material stored at Vaalputs it is safe to say that after 300 years the level of radiation at the site will have fallen off to significant levels.

The procedure at Vaalputs is to excavate large trenches of seven meters in depth, each trench being gradually filled up with one type of storage container – steel drums for the low-level waste. The preparation for intermediate level of waste for storage is more complex. This is vitrified within concrete containers, in turn placed inside a metal casing, surrounding by a further concrete casing. Low level waste typically consists of gloves, clothes, paper and cleaning material and medium level waste of resins, filters and smaller components.

When a trench had been filled, it is capped with the original top layers of earth preserved from the time of excavation. Thereafter the original vegetation reconstitutes itself. Vaalputs is located well within the boundaries of the African tectonic plate, where the risk of substantial earthquake is at a minimum. The site can be regarded as geologically stable.

11.10 ALLIEN INVASIVE SPECIES

Status QUO

c) Currently the Allien Invasive Species has grown wild since 2013/14 financial year when the last initiative by the Namaqua District Municipality was implemented.
d) Kamiesberg have become a water scarce region and therefore new measures must be taken to ensure water availability.
e) One Prosopis tree use from the ground water supply 1000l (1kl) per day and therefore a month the same tree would use 30 000 l (30kl).
f) Across Kamiesberg there are now an increase of invasive species from 1000 hectares to almost 5000 hectares.
g) No measures are in place to control these invasive species as yet.

11.11 AIR QUALITY

NO. 39 of 2004: NATIONAL ENVIRONMENT MANAGEMENT: AIR QUALITY ACT, 2004

Everyone has the Constitutional right to have the environment protected, for the benefit of present and future generations, through reasonable legislative and other measures that:

(a) Prevent pollution and ecological degradation;
(b) Promote conservation; and

(c) Secure ecologically sustainable development and use of natural resources while promoting justifiable economic and social development

LOCAL STANDARDS

In terms of this Act, a municipality may through a By – Law;

a) Identify substances or mixtures of substances in ambient air which, through ambient concentrations, bioaccumulation, deposition or in any other way, present a threat to health, well – being or the environment in the municipality or which the municipality reasonably believes present such threat; and
b) In respect of each of those substances or mixtures of substances, established local standards or emissions from point, non – point or mobile sources in the municipality.

THERE IS A SHARED SERVICE AGREEMENT BETWEEN KAMIESBERG MUNICIPALITY AND THE NAMAQUA DISTRICT MUNICIPALITY IN TERMS OF AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT.

The District are responsible for the following functions:

1) The development and adoption of the Air Quality Management Plan.
2) Submission of AQO Annual Report & Report on Implementation of Air Quality Management Plan.
3) Development of Air Quality By – Laws.

CHAPTER 12. MARINE SECTOR PLANS

Background

Marine Sector Plans specify the overall development objectives and priorities of each marine sector for the coming two decades from a national point of view.

They specify and outline the spatial claims and interests of each sector for South Africa's marine area as a whole – the "spatial ask" of each marine activity and interest. This includes proposed zones and spatial regulations including their location and extent.

The Marine Sector Plans therefore summarise the national spatial and sector priorities that each marine sector would like to see translated into the Marine Area Plans across the Marine Planning Areas as part of the coming Marine Area Plan development processes. The Marine Planning Areas encompass the area between the high-water mark (landmass boundary line) and the exclusive economic zone as seaward boundary.

The Marine Sector Plans are therefore not the integrated Marine Area Plans.

Rather, they are critical inputs for the next step of developing integrated cross-sectoral Marine Area Plans. As such, the Marine Sector Plans serve as the sectors' proposals that will then need

to be further discussed and negotiated across sectors and in multi-actor constellations as part of the Marine Area Plan development.

12.1 Marine Aquaculture Sector Plan

Part 1: Background and context

The aquaculture sector in South Africa is – globally speaking – relatively small but has great potential to grow. Furthermore, the aquaculture sector has undeniable potential to meet the increasing demand for fish in times of declining wild fish stocks. Over the past decade, production volumes for aquaculture commodities have continued to surpass projected figures, a trend which is expected to continue well into the future, provided that conditions remain suitable. The sector contributes to local economic development opportunities and is critical in sustaining livelihoods for communities.

The aquaculture sector in South Africa is classified into the marine aquaculture sector, which is mainly dominated by abalone, mussels and oyster production and the freshwater aquaculture sector which is dominated by trout and tilapia production. The marine aquaculture sector is fast developing in the country, with a major focus on mussels, oysters, abalone and seaweed. Marine aquaculture in South Africa occurs along the coastal regions in the Northern Cape, the Western Cape, the Eastern Cape and KwaZulu-Natal.

Part 2: Sector development objectives

• Develop a sustainable, diverse and economically viable marine aquaculture industry with minimal environmental impact and maximum benefits to local communities.

• Develop Aquaculture Development Zones (ADZs) in order to create an enabling environment for investment and promote sustainable development.

• Increase and promote responsible production, environmentally sustainable farming and ranching practices for different species and new technologies as well as international partnerships to improve global competitiveness.

• Enable improved access to international markets by ensuring quality and safe products through

Implementation of internationally recognized animal health and food safety standards.

Type of zone

Proposed Priority Marine Aquaculture Zones

Spatial regulations

Proposed Priority Marine Aquaculture Zone

In the Proposed Priority Marine Aquaculture Zones (see part 5), priority is given to the farming of marine organisms.

The following uses are prohibited in the zone as they would impede the primary use and conflict with the sector's development objectives:

- Anchoring
- Dumping at sea
- Navigational dredging or dumping of dredged materials
- Naval training
- Ballast water exchanges
- Water sports
- Non-compatible, disruptive, damaging and potentially damaging fishing activities, such as net fishing (trawling, trek netting, gill netting, purse seine dragging, shoving including cast netting)
- Mining
- Sewage and other industrial coastal discharge that may impact food safety

The following activities are regulated in the zone as they could impede the primary use. They can be approved as consent use:

- Recreational fishing
- Small scale fishing

All other activities not specified above are allowed in this zone given their principal compatibility with the primary use, provided that relevant sector regulations are complied with by users and safe navigation is adhered to. Passage through marine aquaculture areas by marine tourism operators or other recreational users is allowed under the condition that a minimum safe distance (to be specified site-specific during the forthcoming marine area plan development) is kept with respect to any installed equipment of the production facilities.

Justification

Proposed Priority Marine Aquaculture Zones ensure that existing marine aquaculture locations are not impeded by other activities and that priority is given to suitable locations for future marine aquaculture development.

Type of zone

Proposed Priority Ranching Zone

Spatial regulations

In the Proposed Priority Ranching Zone (see part 5), priority is given to the ranching of marine organisms.

The following uses are prohibited in the zone as they would impede the primary use and conflict with the sector's development objectives:

• Dumping at sea

• Navigational dredging or dumping of dredged materials

• Bunkering

• Mineral and petroleum resources exploration and exploitation

Proposed Priority Ranching Zones ensure that existing and earmarked abalone ranching areas as well as prospective bivalves (e.g. oysters and mussels) ranching areas are not impeded by other activities.

• Bottom Trawling

• Mining

• Diving with prohibited gear1

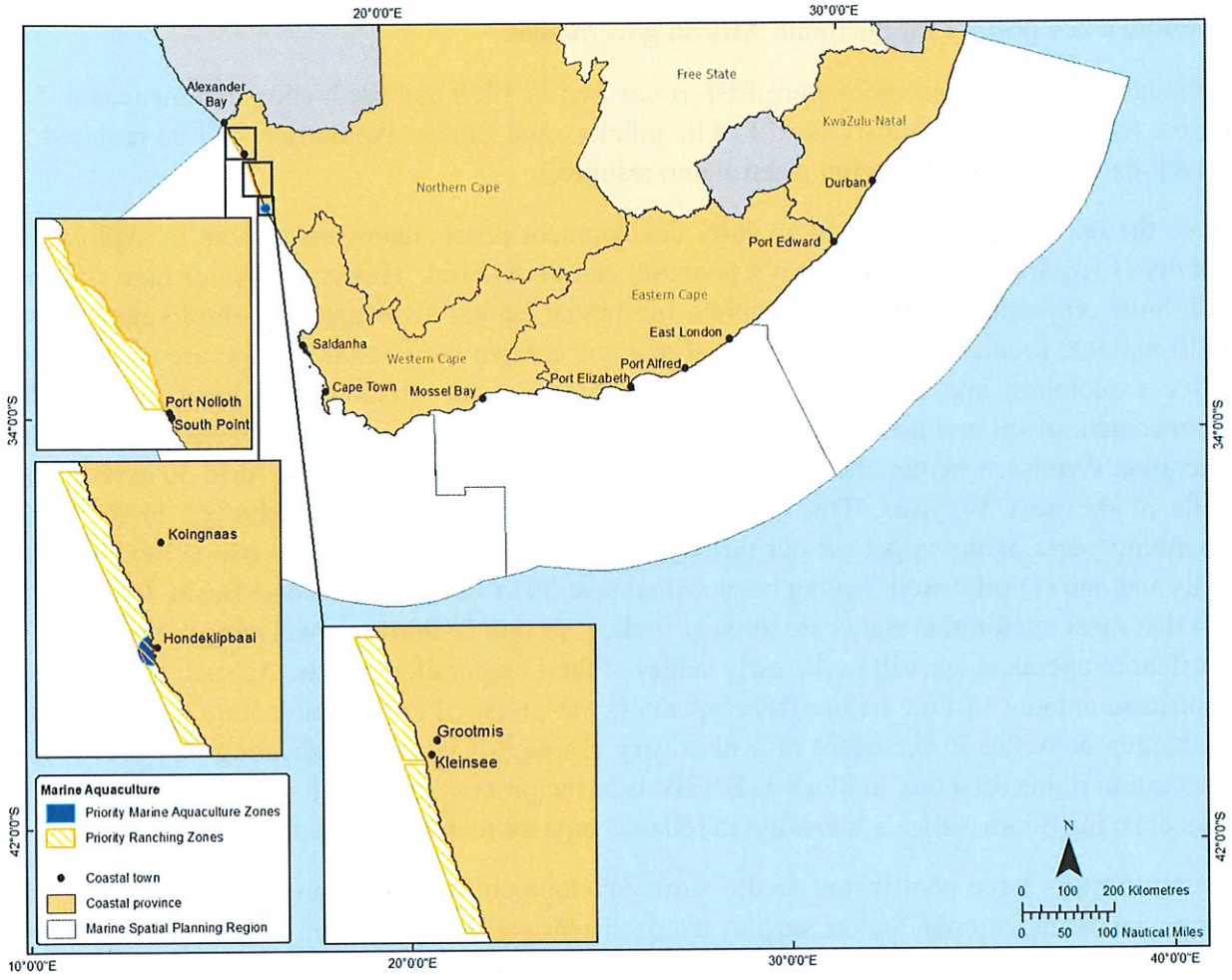
All other activities not specified above are allowed in this zone given their principal compatibility with the primary use, provided that relevant sector regulations are complied with by users.

Justification

Proposed Priority Ranching Zones ensure that existing and earmarked abalone ranching areas as well as prospective bivalves (e.g oysters and mussels) ranching areas are not impeded by other activities.

Part 5: Maps

5 a) Proposed zones in relation to marine aquaculture activities (Northern Cape)



12.2 Marine Offshore Oil and Gas Sector Plans

Part 1: Background and context

South Africa is endowed with rich geological resources in the sea, including hydrocarbons like oil and gas. These are valuable economic assets for the country. Finding and mapping concentrations of offshore oil and gas resources that would merit commercial production is therefore a key priority for the South African government.

Although oil and gas resources were first discovered in 1969 and production commenced in the 1990s, the oil and gas industry is still in its infancy, and further exploration will be required to unlock the potential of the nation's petroleum resources.

Since the oil and gas sector is in an early development phase, major investment in exploration activity is required before the sector's potential can be realised. This is an area of high risk but with huge economic potential that requires substantial capital investment. Operators range from multi-national to smaller locally owned oil and gas companies. Currently there are twenty (20) active exploration and seven (7) production rights over the offshore petroleum blocks. The advancement of oil and gas exploration in South Africa has not been rapid as envisaged by the Operation Phakisa, whereby the Oil and Gas Lab formulated an objective to 'drill 30 exploration wells in the next 10 years. This 30-well aspiration is unlikely to be achieved in the three remaining years of the target set out through Operation Phakisa, with only two (2) exploration wells and one (1) pilot well, having been drilled post 2014 in the South Coast Basin. Despite the fact that most exploration rights are already in their second or third renewal period, the majority of offshore operators are still in the early stages of their exploration efforts. As such it will take a significant amount of time before these operators are prepared to transition from exploration to production activities in the event of a discovery. Though it is worth indicating that one of the exploration rights offshore, in block 11B/12B, is in the process of the said transition. This in turn risks delaying South Africa's transition to reliance on a more diversified energy portfolio.

Various factors have contributed to the slow development of the oil and gas sector in South Africa, including external factors such as the persistent periodic global oil price shocks that have characterised the industry since the sub-prime crisis of 2008. A period of low oil prices that set in during 2014 slowed investment appetite in the sector both globally and in South Africa, and the slow recovery which began in 2017 was reversed quickly with the onset of the Covid-19 pandemic and imposition of lockdown in 2020.

It is essential to have a stable, certain and predictable regulatory environment in order to attract both domestic and foreign capital-intensive investments. The development of the Upstream Petroleum Resources Development Bill, which may be key in facilitating progress and advancement in the sector in line with the objectives of Operation Phakisa, is in progress.

Securing the future of the upstream oil and gas sector will confirm its position as a strategic and indispensable part of South Africa's Integrated Resource Plan, giving opportunity to diversify South Africa's energy production portfolio, address energy challenges and secure low carbon

emissions in the future through gas resources. It can therefore be said that the sector offers significant potential for contributing to the country's socio-economic development.

The minimisation of the environmental impacts associated with exploration and production activities offshore is a fundamental concern for the South African government. In order to preserve the environment while efficiently maximising hydrocarbon recovery, exploration and production activities have to be undertaken as per the prescribed regulatory framework.

Both the sector's development objectives and guidelines are based on national policies, and on relevant legislation and respective regulations, including but not limited to:

- The Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act (No. 28 of 2002) and associated regulations.
- The Petroleum Pipelines Act (No. 60 of 2003)
- The Petroleum Products Act (No. 120 of 1977)
- The Gas Act (No. 48 of 2001)
- The International Trade and Administration Act (No. 71 of 2002)
- The National Environmental Management Act (No. 107 of 1998) and associated regulations.
- The National Environmental Management: Waste Act (No. 59 of 2008)
- The National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Act (No. 57 of 2003)
- The National Environmental Management: Air Quality Act (No. 39 of 2004)

Part 2: Sector development objectives

On the basis of South Africa's relevant legislation and respective regulations, and policies, the following development objectives are identified that guide future development of the sector as part of and through MSP:

1. Create an enabling environment for the exploration and development of oil and gas resources within South Africa's offshore Exclusive Economic Zone (EEZ)

2. Prioritise the exploration and development of domestic oil and gas reserves to support the broader economic growth objectives of South Africa

3. Prioritise early phase exploration with the intention of locating leads and prospectivity in the greater part of the EEZ

4. Attract foreign investment interest by international petroleum companies to further develop South Africa's underexplored hydrocarbon reserves, in addition to contributing positively towards job creation and skills development in South Africa, including attracting global service companies to set-up regional hub in South Africa.

5. Create an industry which delivers effective risk management across all its operations and which is especially vigilant in testing operational impacts on current and future environments

6. Maximize the recovery of potential hydrocarbon reserves sustainably and efficiently through a focus on industry-led innovation, enhancing the skills base and ensuring supply chain growth for the benefit of ordinary South Africans

7. Contribute to satisfying the future energy demands for the country while balancing this with the protection of the marine environment and those communities who rely on it

8. Exploration and production of oil and gas resources is developed in an orderly and sustainable manner, consistent with section 24 of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa and environmental legislative framework, to ensure that while benefits are realised, environmental and socio-economic concerns are addressed.

9. The security of tenure for oil and gas rights holders as provided for in terms of section 2(g) of the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act (No. 28 of 2002) must be safeguarded.

Part 4: Proposed marine zones and spatial regulations

One type of proposed priority zone is delineated in relation to offshore oil and gas activities2:

1. Proposed Oil and Gas Production Zones

2. Proposed Oil and Gas Prospective Zones

Type of zone
Proposed Oil and Gas Production Zones

Spatial regulations
In Proposed Oil and Gas Production Zones (see part 5), priority is given to the extraction of oil and gas resources.

The following uses are prohibited in this zone as they would impede the primary use and conflict with the sector's development objectives:

• Military practices

Adjacent to sea surface oil and gas infrastructure shipping is prohibited based on the existing Traffic Separation Scheme (TSS) south of Mossel Bay. If and when required, new TSS's may be introduced as new oil and gas platforms and infrastructure are being developed to minimize risks. Further restrictions that result from the safety requirements of production operations may apply and are likely to be temporal, i.e. they only apply when extraction is actively taking place (e.g.

Justification

The Proposed Oil and Gas Production Zones are required to ensure that: (i) long-term investment is secured to facilitate the production of oil and gas resources, and (ii) security of tenure is safeguarded. This will ultimately contribute to the socio-economic development of the country.

2 Offshore oil and gas exploration activities are permitted to take place everywhere, unless the spatial regulations of other sector's zones (in Marine Sector Plans and eventually the Marine Area Plans) list the activity as consent use or prohibited use.

restricted access for fishing vessels and commercial ships). Users are required to ensure whether production activities are taking place based on information provided by the maritime transport authorities and announced publicly.

The following

activity is regulated in the zone as it could impede the primary use. It can be approved as consent use:

• Laying of new underwater communication cables

• Strict spatial environmental protection that would be incompatible with production activities (e.g. gazetting of new Marine Protected Areas).

For this use, agreement should be sought with PASA and the licence holder on where such infrastructure can be placed without impeding current or future offshore oil and gas operations.

All other activities not specified above are allowed in this zone when production operations take place based on the principle of compatibility with the primary use, provided that relevant sector regulations are complied with.

Proposed Oil and Gas Prospective Zones

Spatial regulations

In Proposed Oil and Gas Prospective Zones, priority is given to the future development of oil and gas extraction.

No uses are prohibited in this zone.

The following activities are regulated in the zone as they could impede the primary use. They can be approved as consent use:

• Strict spatial environmental protection that would be incompatible with future production activities (e.g. gazetting of new Marine Protected Areas)

• Laying of new underwater communication cables

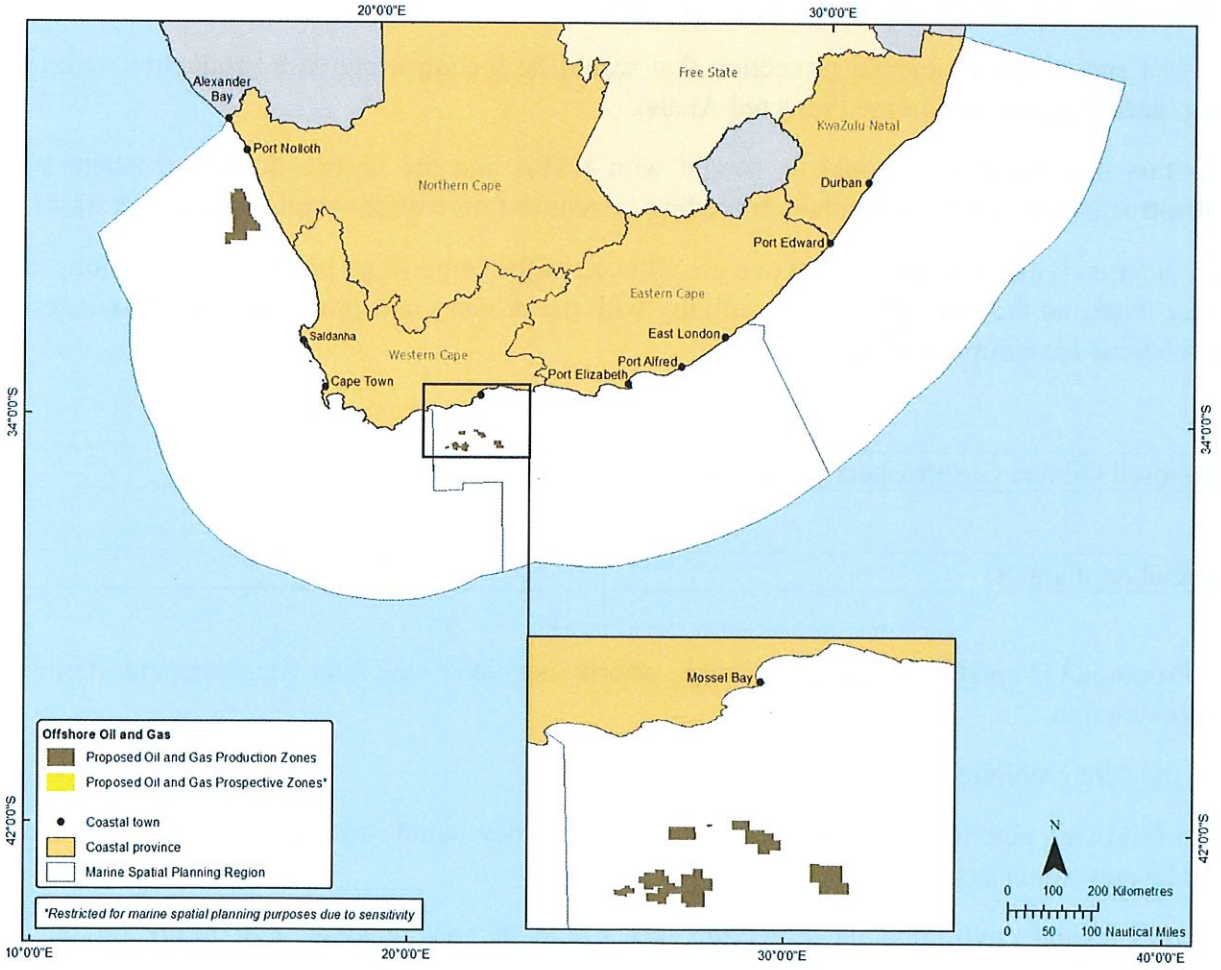
For this use, agreement should be sought with PASA and the licence holder on where such infrastructure can be placed without impeding future offshore oil and gas operations.

All other activities not specified above are allowed in this zone based on the principle of compatibility with the primary use, provided that relevant sector regulations are complied with.

Justification

The Proposed Oil and Gas Prospective Zones are required to ensure that Medium and High rated prospective areas (high chance to find oil and gas) and High Graded resource areas, identified during the exploration phase, are secured for future petroleum development. These zones have a combined size of 307 536 km2 and cover

40% of the Western Marine Planning Area, 25% of the Southern Marine Planning Area, 30% of the Eastern Marine Planning Area and 0% of the PEI Marine Planning Area.



12.3 Marine Underwater Infrastructure Sector Plans

Background and context

Underwater infrastructure is of national and international economic importance and supports the growth of other marine-based sectors as well as overall economic development. Submarine cables are critical for the information and international telecommunications infrastructure, communication and broadband provisions. Subsea infrastructure associated with oil and gas exploration and production activities (e.g. pipelines, wellheads, manifolds, etc.) are vital backbones for the exploitation of hydrocarbon resources. Wastewater is discharged into the sea through pipelines close to the shore in the proximity of larger cities and metro areas.

South Africa is currently connected to the rest of the world through a number of submarine cables with a combined length of more than 70,000 km in South Africa's ocean space. This international network of telecommunication cables connects the country to West and East Africa, Madagascar, Mauritius, La Réunion and Asia further East as well as Latin America via Brazil. The cables tend to be laid on seabed with a shallow gradient and soft sediment, often meandering to find the most suitable route around any seabed obstructions. The South African sections of the international cables lie on the seafloor and are not buried; the greatest cable depth is 6,000m. Oil and gas pipelines in the marine environment extend over 155 km from the coast to offshore platforms and over 170 km from the platforms which carry exploited hydrocarbon products to gas-to-liquids plants. In addition, there are over 200 wells with wellheads. Each wellhead consists of an assemblage of necessary equipment that is mounted at the opening of the well to regulate and monitor the extraction of hydrocarbon derivatives from the underground formation. The equipment also prevents leaking of natural gas or crude oil out of the well and prevents blowouts due to high pressure formations. There are also pipelines close to the coastline used to discharge wastewater into the marine environment. No submarine power cables exist.

As vital backbones of South Africa's economic infrastructure, submarine telecommunication cables, oil and gas pipelines, wellheads as well as wastewater outfall pipelines need to be maintained, developed and enhanced to enable growth of the marine sectors that depend on it and in terms of the entire South African economy. This will include the installation of new underwater infrastructure as the economy unfolds and diversifies in future.

Both the sector's development objectives and guidelines are based on national policies and on relevant legislation and respective regulations as well as international conventions ratified by South Africa, including but not limited to:

- Electronic Communications Act (Act No. 36 of 2005)
- International Convention for the Protection of Submarine Cables 1884
- Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act (Act No. 28 of 2002)
- Mine Health and Safety Act (Act No. 29 of 1996)
- National Environmental Management Act (Act No. 107 of 1998)

• Integrated Coastal Management Act (Act No. 24 of 2008)

• 2014 National Guideline for the Discharge of Effluent from Land-based Sources into the Coastal Environment

Proposed marine zones and spatial regulations

One type of proposed priority zone is delineated in relation to underwater infrastructure:

• Proposed Underwater Infrastructure Zones

Type of zone

Proposed Underwater Infrastructure Zones

Spatial regulations

In Proposed Underwater Infrastructure Zones priority is given to ensuring that the installed submarine infrastructure (cables, pipelines, wellheads) are safe and undisturbed.

The following uses are prohibited in the zones as they would conflict the primary use, particularly as they may interact with the fixed infrastructure and cause danger to other uses and the marine environment:

- Anchoring of ships
- Bottom trawling
- Military practices on/at the sea floor

In addition, marine aquaculture may neither occur if such installations on the sea surface are fixed on the sea floor.

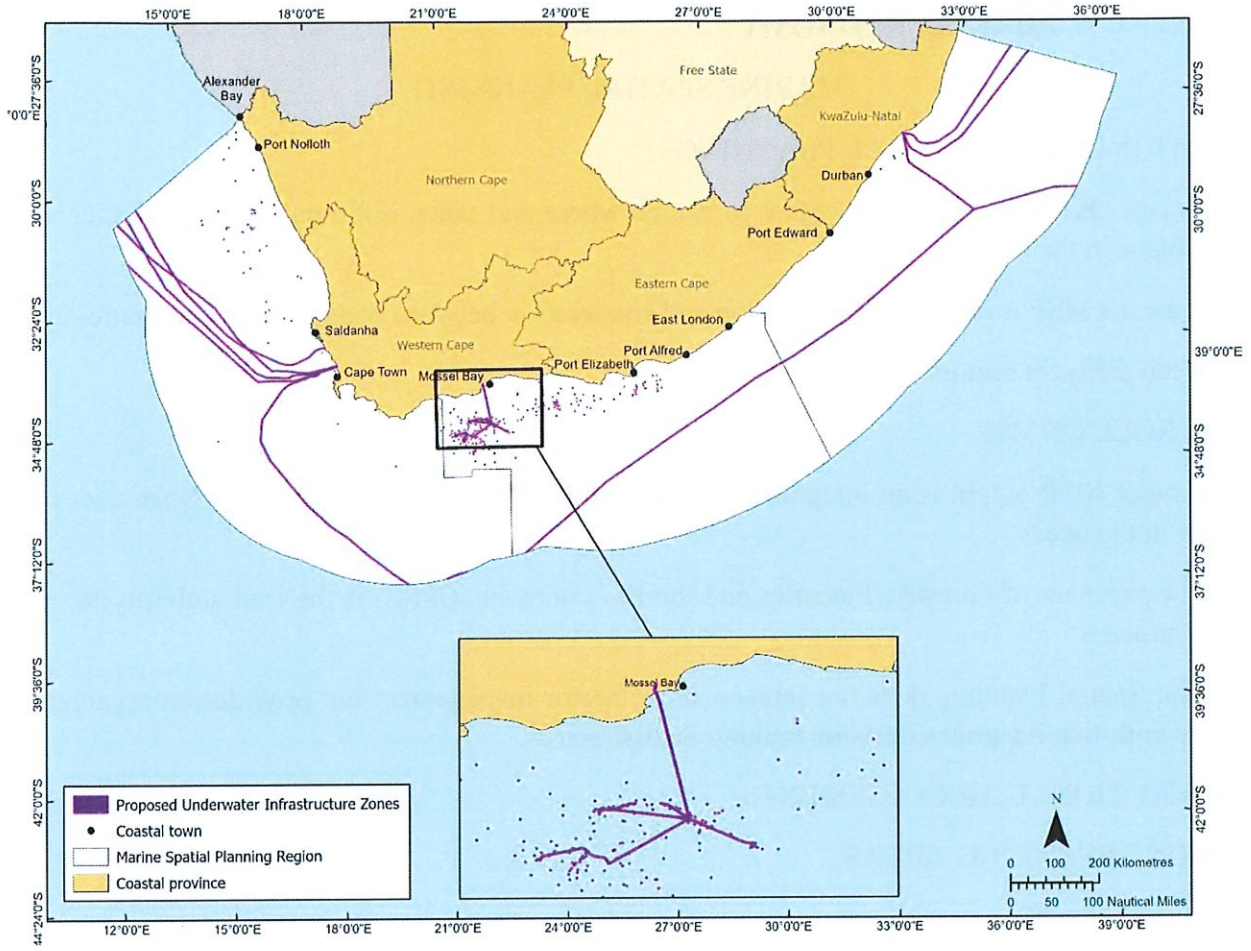
Strict environmental protection measures may also not occur in the proposed zones.

New underwater infrastructure may be laid or installed in the proximity of the proposed zones but outside of the safety margins of 500 m in the case of cables, pipelines and wellheads.

Uses that do not disturb the sea floor can occur in Proposed Underwater Infrastructure Zones. This means that all other activities, except for the prohibited and listed uses above, are allowed in this zone given their compatibility with the primary use.

Justification

Submarine infrastructure is critical due to its socio-economic significance and the possible dangers associated with interactions with other uses.


15°0'0"E
18°0'0"E
21°0'0"E
24°0'0"E
27°0'0"E
30°0'0"E
33°0'0"E
36°0'0"E
27°36'0"S
30°0'0"S
32°24'0"S
34°48'0"S
37°12'0"S
39°36'0"S
42°0'0"S
44°24'0"S
39°0'0"E
12°0'0"E
Alexander Bay
Port Nolloth
Northern Cape
Free State
KwaZulu-Natal
Durban
Port Edward
Eastern Cape
East London
Port Alfred
Port Elizabeth
Saldanha
Western Cape
Cape Town
Mossel Bay
Proposed Underwater Infrastructure Zones
Coastal town
Marine Spatial Planning Region
Coastal province
N
0 100 200 Kilometres
0 50 100 Nautical Miles

12.4 PHAKISA ECONOMY

MARINE SPATIAL PLANNING

WHAT IS MARINE SPATIAL PLANNING

A process that brings people together to decide where and when different human activities can take place in the ocean

This means MSP is all about coordination and cooperation between people and communities and between different sectors.

THE ROLE OF MSP

The major MSP output is an integrated marine area plan that sets out where and when uses can occur in the ocean.

The Department of Forestry, Fisheries and the Environment (DFFE) is the lead authority for the MSP process

Marine Spatial Planning does not replace single sector management but provides an organizing framework that integrates decision making across sectors.

INSTITUTIONAL ARRANGEMENTS

MARINE PLANNING AREAS

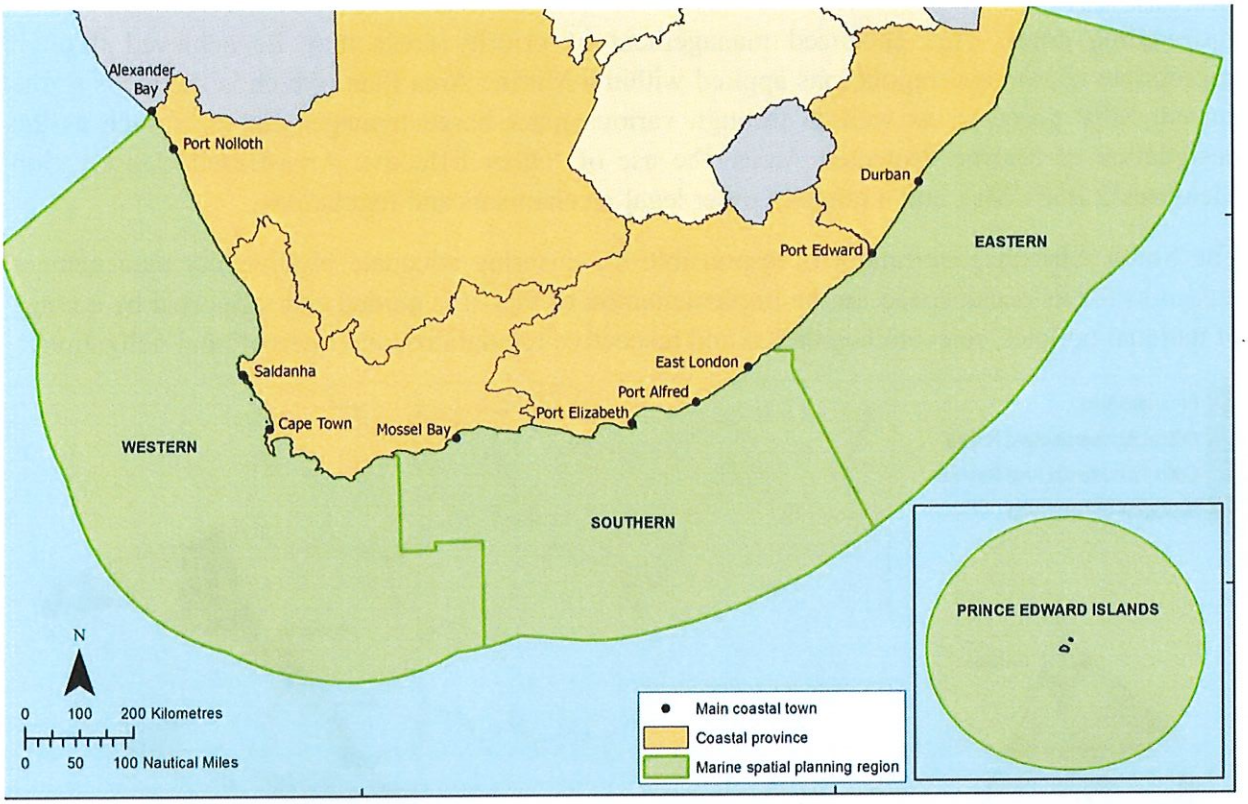
Landward boundary:

high water mark

Seaward boundary: the exclusive economic zone

Does not include estuaries

Four planning areas based on ecological, administrative and practical issues



12.5 Marine Biodiversity Sector Plan

Background and context

South Africa has a rich and globally unique diversity of marine and coastal species and ecosystems. The marine and coastal biodiversity contained within our marine territory is an essential foundation for the South African economy, providing multiple services and benefits for society. Maintaining these services and benefits, upon which many of the sectors such as fisheries and tourism depend for their long-term existence, is a key prerequisite for socio-economic development and is therefore a priority for the South African government. The basis for this is that economic development cannot occur at the expense of the environment and its ecological functioning, as this will result in inevitable collapse of marine biodiversity and its associated benefits. Therefore, effective management of marine biodiversity is not an impediment to socio-economic development, but rather its foundation.

Critical Biodiversity Areas (CBAs) are sites that have been identified as being of high conservation priority by the marine biodiversity science community using the global best practice of Systematic Conservation Planning to integrate the best available knowledge of marine and coastal biodiversity1. Many parts of these CBAs and associated Ecological Support Areas (ESAs) also meet the internationally recognised CBD criteria for Ecologically or Biologically Significant Marine Areas (EBSAs). These are areas that, through scientific criteria, have been identified as important for the healthy functioning of our oceans and the services that they provide, and that may require enhanced management and conservation measures, relative to

surrounding areas. This enhanced management of priority areas may be achieved through appropriate zoning and regulations applied within a Marine Area Plan (which is the focus of the current MSP process), as well as through various place-based management tools such as the designation of Marine Protected Areas, the use of 'Other Effective Area-Based Conservation Measures'2 (OECMs), and a range of other legal mechanisms and regulations.

The South African government is responsible for ensuring adequate biodiversity management measures for its ocean space. In the implementation of this, it is guided and supported by a range of national policies, relevant legislation and respective regulations, and international obligations.

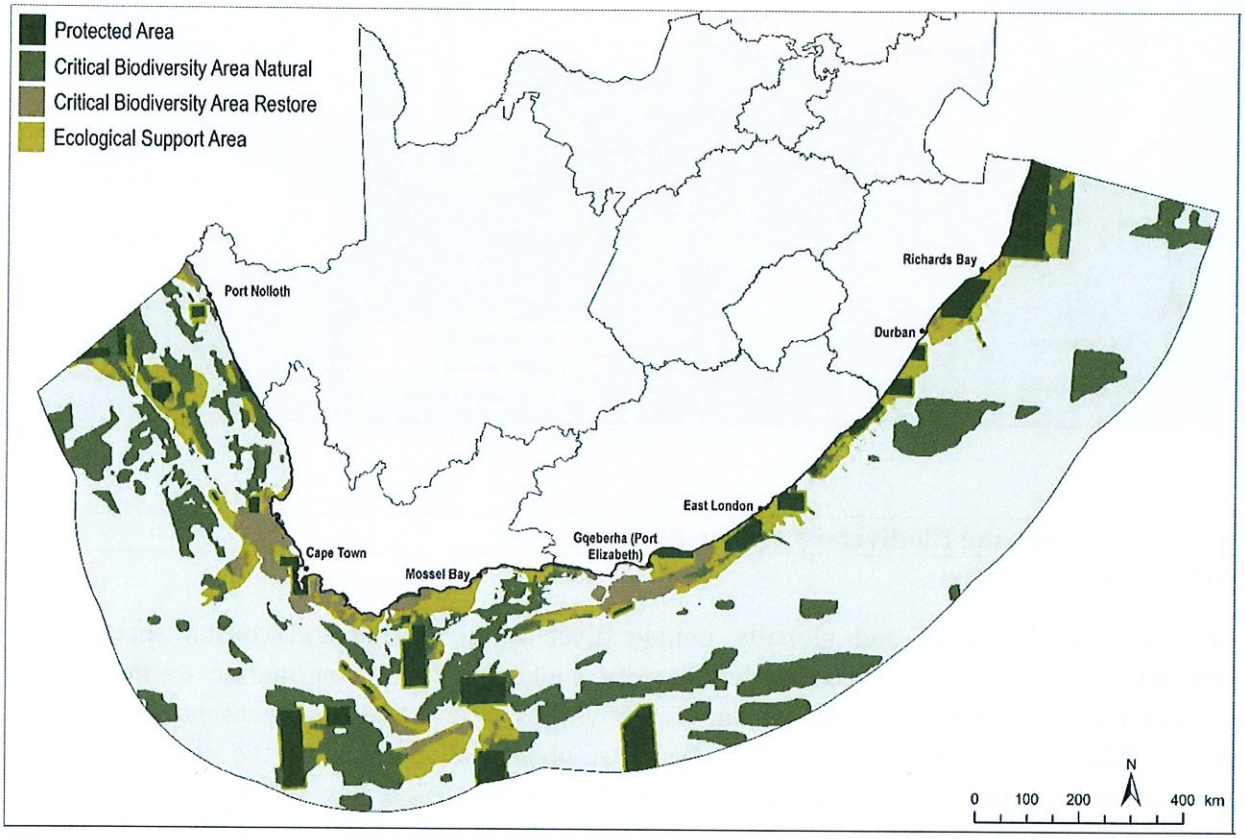


Figure 2: Map of existing/current gazetted Marine Protected Areas, and Critical Biodiversity Areas (Natural and Impacted) and Ecological Support Areas from the National Coastal and Marine Spatial Biodiversity Plan, which is the basis for the Biodiversity Sector Plan. The latest version of the plan is available at https://tinyurl.com/CBA-Map-and-Sea-use-Guidelines.

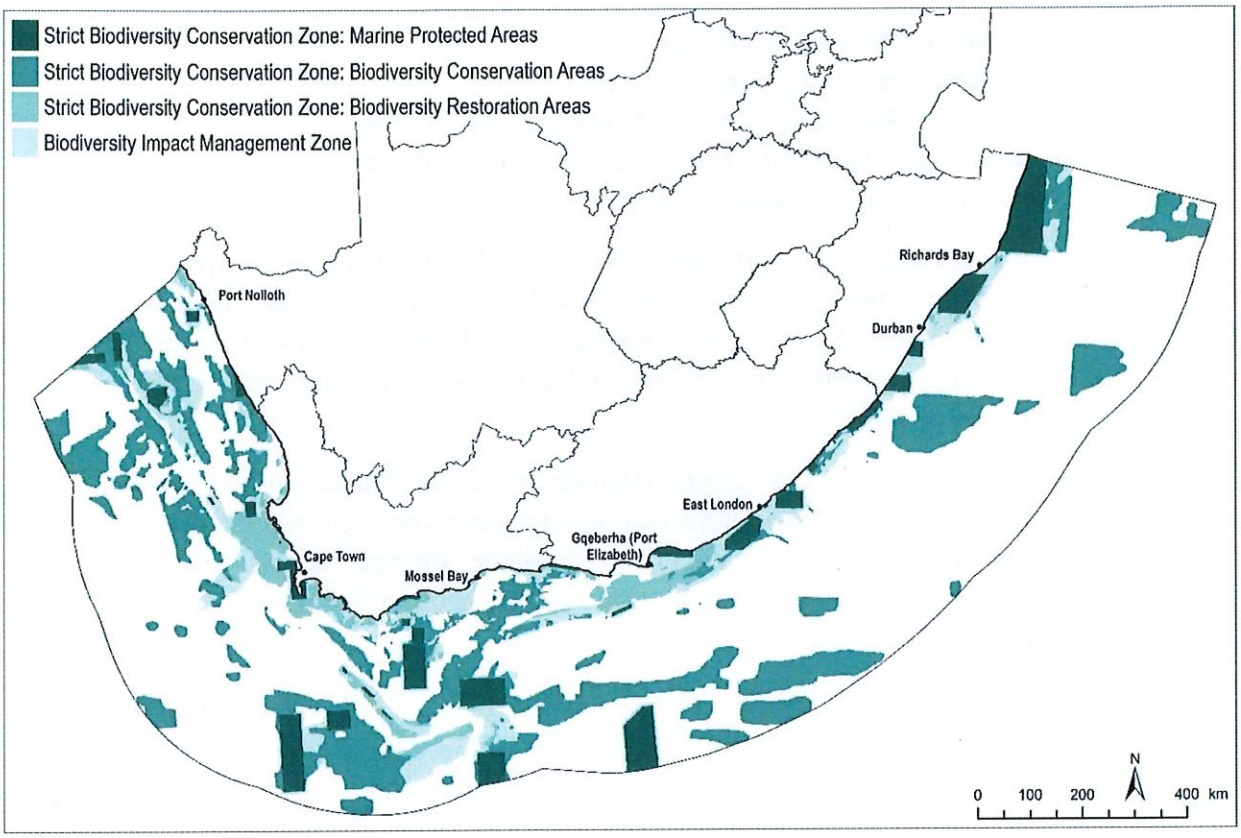


Figure 3: Map of proposed biodiversity management zones (May 2021). See text for a full explanation of the zones with their proposed sea uses16.

12.6	Marine Science and Innovation Sector Plan

Background and context

South Africa is a maritime nation, surrounded on all but its northern boundaries by the sea. Its geographical position at the southern tip of Africa has been a major factor determining its natural and human history as much as its climate past, present and future. South Africa has a geographical advantage as it occupies an important geo-strategic position in the Southern Hemisphere, being surrounded by three great oceans – the Indian Ocean, South Atlantic Ocean & Southern Ocean. This geographic location and the relatively sharp interface and contrast between the Agulhas and the Benguela systems, provides its own dynamic for marine and coastal environmental research.

South Africa has a diverse and active marine science community, with areas of excellence in ecology and ecosystem research, fisheries biology and marine biodiversity. The South African coastal and marine environment sector is very broad. There are currently several types of research questions and research priorities that are being pursued. These priorities range from issues such as technological innovation to future economic prospects, environmental protection (e.g. research on human impacts on the environment) and social justice.

The Marine and Antarctic Research Strategy identifies a range of research programmes which are required to address the national research imperatives. These programmes are aimed at improving the available knowledge base on oceans and coasts and to provide essential information on living and non-living resources. They form the evidence base for decision-making and prospective ocean uses and management.

Responsible marine research to support sustainable ocean development ensures public access to research results, takes up issues of gender and ethics in its content and process, and contributes to formal and informal science education. Responsible research also means that researchers work with other societal actors to better align the research process and its outcomes with the values, needs and expectations of society.

The bulk of research conducted in South African waters is funded by the public purse. International funding through collaborations and private sector complements the public funding. Private sector and international partners also contribute through access to infrastructure platforms. Various national and international actors are engaged in marine and coastal research in South Africa, including research

institutions, government departments, private companies, NGOs or inter-governmental organisations such as the Benguela Current Convention.

Much of marine and coastal research in the natural and environmental sciences relies on sampling and observation. This is done from ships, air and space, and through permanent or semi-permanent equipment such as buoys or measuring masts. In order to carry out these activities, research requires access to all parts of the sea and relevant resources.

When engaged in research activities, responsible research respects the integrity of the natural environment and keeps environmental impacts to a minimum.

12.7	**Martine and Underwater Cultural Heritage Sector Plan Background and context**

South Africa's coastline has a rich and diverse maritime and underwater cultural heritage (MUCH) that dates far back into pre-history and comprises about 2,800 known shipwrecks, submerged pre-historic landscapes of archaeological and palaeontological significance, stone-walled and woven intertidal fish traps, and sacred sites to which oral traditions are attached. Furthermore, the exploitation of marine resources in South Africa stretches back at least 160,000 years, as early humans exploited the ocean for resources such as shellfish. This long and enduring relationship with the ocean is an important part of the country's rich cultural history. These maritime heritage resources require protection, conservation, and preservation and, if appropriate to their ongoing conservation, sustainable use to safeguard their cultural significance.

It is challenging to estimate the direct use and socio-economic value of MUCH. However, these heritage resources contribute indirectly to the GDP through synergies with other sectors. For example, effective management of cultural heritage has the potential to garner international interest in South Africa's heritage resources and thereby has an indirect impact on driving the

economy and offering economic opportunities through tourism. Locations of shipwrecks and important heritage sites such as Robben Island attract large numbers of tourists daily and ultimately contribute to job creation. The public can enjoy and benefit from MUCH sites and celebration of this heritage assists in bringing about national social cohesion.

South African MUCH resources are of national and international significance as they reflect the country's role in the globalisation of the modern world. These resources, particularly shipwrecks, reflect the links between South Africa and the rest of the world and serve as markers of important global trends in trade, migration, slavery, and resource exploitation. These heritage resources provide information about the past and offer South Africans and other nations the opportunity to understand their history, as well as preserving this legacy for future generations. It is therefore crucial that these resources are managed, conserved, and protected as part of the nation's shared history.

MUCH resources are fragile and non-renewable. Threats to these irreplaceable resources include, but are not limited to: climate change, commercial salvage, lack of awareness, and limited capacity in a developing sector. Since sectoral development and capacity-building is ongoing, it is crucial that MUCH resources are given protection through adequate legislation and management. As such, international protocols and conventions and domestic legislation focusing on the safeguarding of MUCH exist, and they are implemented by the South African Heritage Resources Agency's (SAHRA) MUCH unit.

The maritime heritage sector's development objectives and guidelines are based on national legislation, regulations, and policy, as well as international conventions ratified by South Africa, including but not limited to:

- National Heritage Resources Act (Act No. 25 of 1999)
- South African Heritage Resources Agency's Wreck Resources Permit Policy
- 2001 UNESCO Convention on the Protection of the Underwater Cultural Heritage
- World Heritage Convention Act, 1999 (Act No. 49 of 1999)
- National Framework on Underwater Cultural Heritage

Proposed marine zones and spatial regulations

SAHRA's Wreck Resources Permit Policy identifies a wreck site as the area occupied by a 200m radius around the centre of a wreck. This guides SAHRA in imposing a 200m exclusion zone around a protected wreck when it falls within a proposed development area, although it must be noted that the exclusion zone is defined on a case-by-case basis and may be increased for large wrecks, wrecks with imprecise coordinates, and highly significant wrecks.

In addition to the NHRA, other legislation and regulations are in place that act to conserve heritage sites, such as the National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Act (Act No. 57 of 2003) which establishes Marine Protected Areas (MPA). These MPAs have management

plans, which assist in the conservation of heritage sites, for example, the Namaqua Fossil Forest as well as prehistoric fish traps in MPAs along the coastline.

Due to the small areas occupied by most MUCH sites, no dedicated zone for MUCH is delineated (for now) as part of the Marine Area Plans. In the forthcoming planning process for the Marine Area Plans, MUCH interests and related demands on ocean space may be zoned for when needed. This need may arise when the interest and related demands are not wholly secured through other zones and spatial regulations, such as that of environmental protection for intertidal sites. In this context, the 200m buffer zone around known MUCH wreck sites serves as a basis for inclusion of MUCH interests in the Marine Area Plans if the need arises.

12.8 Coastal and Marine Tourism Sector Plan

Background and context

South Africa's diverse variety of natural habitats, flora and fauna, histories, cultures and traditions have enabled the country to become one of the prime tourism destinations on the African continent. Although the majority of recreational activities are concentrated inland, marine and coastal tourism is an essential component of the country's recreational offer.

In this context, coastal tourism refers to land-based recreational activities taking place on the coast for which the proximity to the sea is a condition including their respective services, whereas marine tourism refers to sea-based recreational activities as well as their land-based services.

Marine and coastal recreational activities in South Africa include but are not limited to beach activities, fishing and wildlife tourism. The latter allows visitors to experience cetaceans and seabirds and offers them to enjoy boat-based whale watching (BBWW), white shark cage diving (WSCD) and scuba diving. Marine and coastal tourism activities organised by individuals or commercial operators take advantage of the dramatic coastal scenery.

There is significant potential for growth given the expanding national, regional and international tourism sector as well as the rich and diverse resources the country has to offer to visitors. A clean and well managed marine environment is therefore fundamental to a successful marine and coastal tourism industry in South Africa, making it important to ensure these qualities are maintained and enhanced.

The sector's development objectives and guidelines are based on national policies, relevant legislation and respective regulations, including but not limited to the:

- Tourism Act (Act No. 3 of 2014); and
- National Environmental Management Act (Act No. 107 of 1998).

12.9	Marine Defense (Navy) Sector Plan

Background and context

Given the strategic geographical position of South Africa at the southern tip of the African continent, its ocean and coasts are critical for military operations and for practice exercises by the Navy as the maritime component of the South African National Defence Force. The territorial waters and EEZ are used for enforcement of territorial sovereignty, military practice activities, search and rescue operations, hydrographic surveys, and to provide assistance if required for the enforcement of fisheries and marine resources protection laws and regulations. Potential threats to the country's security interests, territorial integrity, and national assets are surveyed and countered if necessary.

Both the sector's development objectives and guidelines are based on national policies, and on relevant legislation and respective regulations, including but not limited to the:

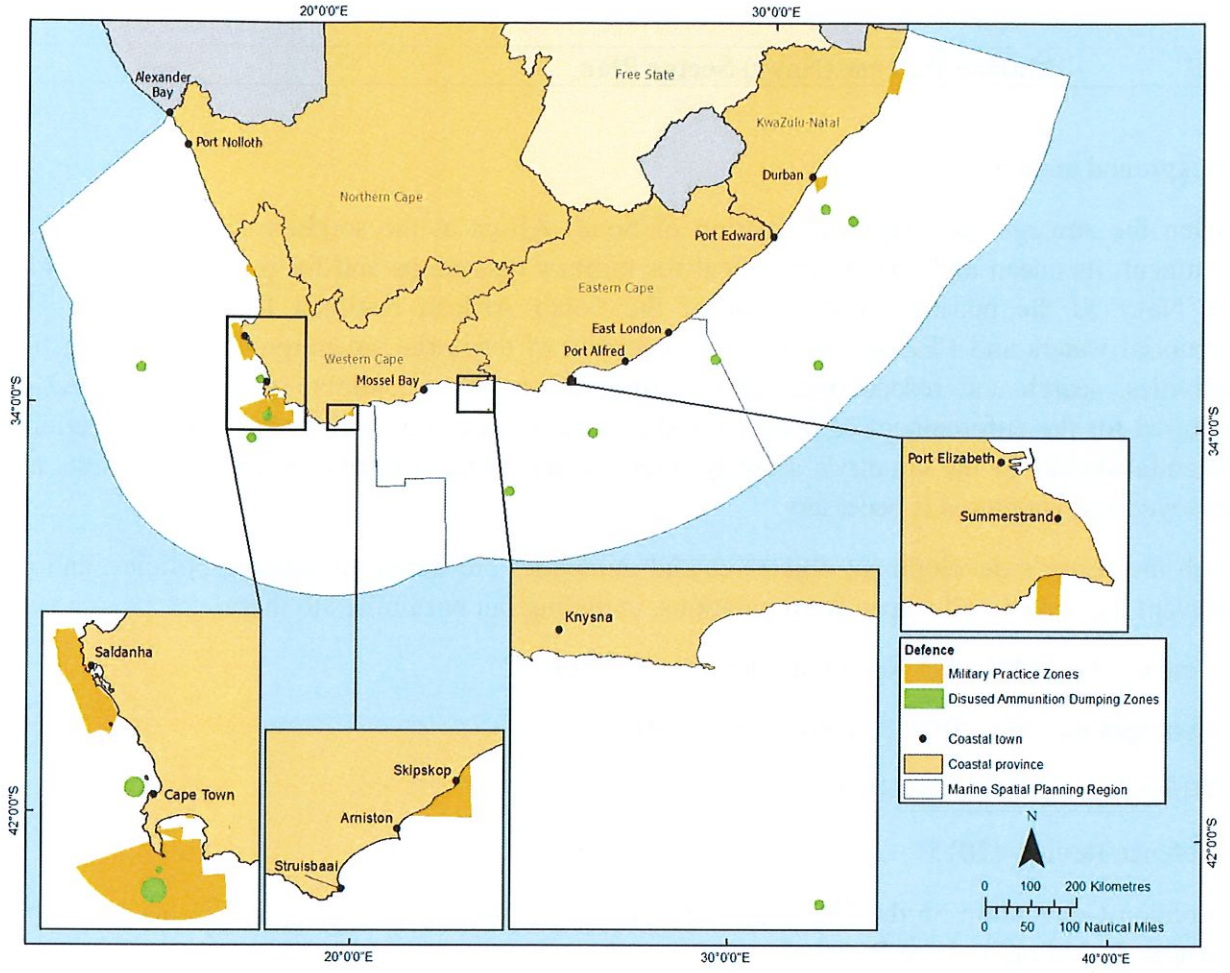
• Defence Act, 2002 (Act No. 42 of 2002, as amended)

• Hydrographic Act, 2019 (Act No. 35 of 2019)

• White Paper on Defence (1996)

• Defence Review (2015)

• London Convention on the Prevention of Marine Pollution by Dumping of Wastes and Other Matters, including its 1996 Protocol



12.10 Marine Transport and Ports Sector Plan

Background and context

South Africa is a maritime nation with several major ports and numerous proclaimed fishing harbours and marinas. South Africa occupies a geostrategic position on a major, globally significant sea-trading route that lies at the heart of the North-South trade and connects the Asian markets with those of the Americas.

South Africa is a primary goods export-oriented economy and one of the world's top 15 sea-trading nations. 58% of South Africa's GDP is based on trade and 98% of South Africa's trade volume moves by ships. In addition, the country generates a significant 3.5% of the world's seaborne trade volume.1

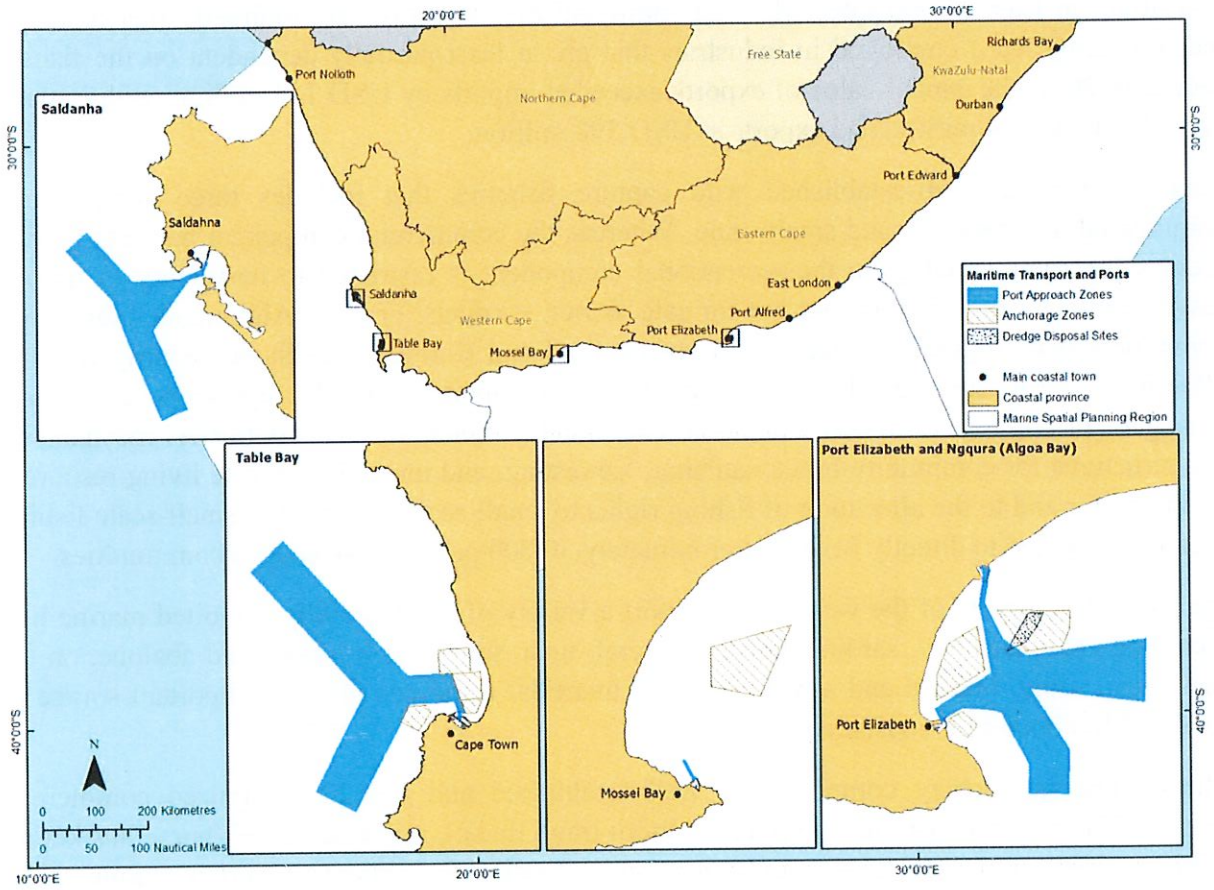
The country's ports provide the critical transport infrastructure between land and sea and are key enablers for the movement of goods and people. Ports connect to the hinterland through a linked roads and rail infrastructure to and from destinations of consumption and production points in the country; and throughout the region and into the world.

Virtually all maritime industries and sectors require the ports and harbours for their operations, particularly defence, fisheries, geological resource exploration and exploitation, mariculture and

tourism. South Africa has nine commercial ports: Richards Bay, Durban, East London, Ngqura (Coega), Port Elizabeth, Mossel Bay, Cape Town, Saldanha Bay and Port Nolloth.

It is expected that the country's ports will have an increasingly significant role in supporting future growth of the South African economy. Port expansion and harbour development is to be assumed accordingly. It will hence be important for the maritime transport sector and those that rely on the ports infrastructure to ensure that the port and its related sectors can grow by aligning marine and terrestrial planning processes for the provision of sufficient space with necessary facilities and coastal and inland transport infrastructure links.

International protocols and conventions and domestic legislation focusing on maritime security, safety, laws of the sea and pollution apply to shipping and ports. The South African government is responsible for ensuring that protocol measures are implemented.



12.11 WILD FISHERIES SECTOR PLAN

Background and context

Fishing is the oldest, and most widespread use in the marine waters of South Africa. The country is a net exporter of wild capture fishery products, one of the leading capture fisheries nations in the world and the 2nd largest on the African continent. The sector has considerable social, cultural, and economic importance to the country. Importantly, it provides a renewable source of income and food.

Fisheries contributes roughly R9bn, which equates to roughly 0.1% of the country's GDP. Fisheries is however more important for economic development in the Western Cape where 11 of the 13 proclaimed fishing harbours are situated. These contribute more than 5% to Gross Provincial Domestic Product. It is estimated that the direct employment in the industry constitutes at least 41,000 jobs, while an additional 81,000 people are indirectly (net building, bait preparing, etc.) employed in industries that are at least partially dependent on the fishing sector. In 2017, the annual value of exports exceeded imports by USD 174 million, with imports valued at USD 424 million and exports at USD 598 million.

South Africa has well-established wild capture fisheries that includes three components: commercial, recreational, and small-scale. Whereas the commercial component harvests marine species for commercial gain, the recreational component is restricted to harvesting of marine resources for leisure or sport and not for sale, barter, earnings, or gain. Although a subsistence component was originally conceived to ensure food and (limited) livelihood security this has effectively been superseded by the small-scale component which represents a towards management approaches which emphasise community orientation and establishes mechanisms and structures for community-based catching, harvesting, and managing marine living resources by the sector and to the allocation of fishing rights to small-scale fishers. The small-scale fishing sector is expected to directly benefit approximately 30 000 people from coastal communities.

the productive waters of the west coast support a variety of commercially exploited marine life, including hake, anchovy, sardine, horse mackerel, tuna, snoek, rock lobster and abalone, on the east coast, squid, linefish and a wide range of intertidal resources offer an important source of food and livelihood for coastal communities.

The commercial fishery component is well established and has 22 recognized commercial sectors. The major industrialised sectors, bottom trawl (hake), midwater trawl (horse mackerel), offshore west coast rock lobster and purse seine (sardine & anchovy), overlap marginally in waters ranging from 50m to 900m deep and their effort is relatively consistent across the area. Wide-ranging sectors such as large pelagics (tuna & swordfish) and boat-based line fishing (geelbek, snoek, kob etc.) occupy their footprint in a variable manner, dependent on weather, season, and availability of migratory stocks. The inshore sectors which are virtually coastal (shallower than 50m) have a greater degree of overlap, e.g. inshore west coast rock lobster, abalone, line fishing, recreational fishing and harvesting of intertidal

invertebrates. Except for the large pelagic sector, South Africa's fishing occurs shallower than 1000m, representing a relatively small proportion of the EEZ.

To offload and process the catch, all the fishing sector components use and depend on the country's ports and harbours around the coast, which are the necessary logistical, processing, and marketing hubs for the sectors.

In 2020, the Status of the South African Marine Fishery Resources reported on 61 fish stocks which are variously harvested by different sectors. At the time, the assessments indicated that a total of 61% of stocks were considered not to be of concern, while 39% of stocks were of concern. These figures indicate an improvement over the past eight years, with 46% of stocks being considered not to be of concern in 2012, 49% in 2014, and 52% in 2016. This stock status is the result of different pressures, such as fishing and environmental fluctuations, and past management practices. The aim of sustainable management is to have resources that are in an optimal state and that are fished at optimal levels. However, historical over-fishing may have reduced some stocks to depleted or heavily depleted levels and rebuilding these stocks could be attempted by reducing fishing pressure. Such rebuilding can take several years or even decades as the rate of recovery is dependent both on the biology of the species concerned and on natural recruitment fluctuations. Additionally, short-lived species (e.g. anchovy and squid) typically show high levels of recruitment variability that can result in substantial inter-annual fluctuations in population size; these could lead to the status of that resource changing from being depleted in one year to being optimal in the next. As such, there are also uncertainties in relation to the stock status that are underpinned by insufficient or conflicting data and data-poor resources respectively.

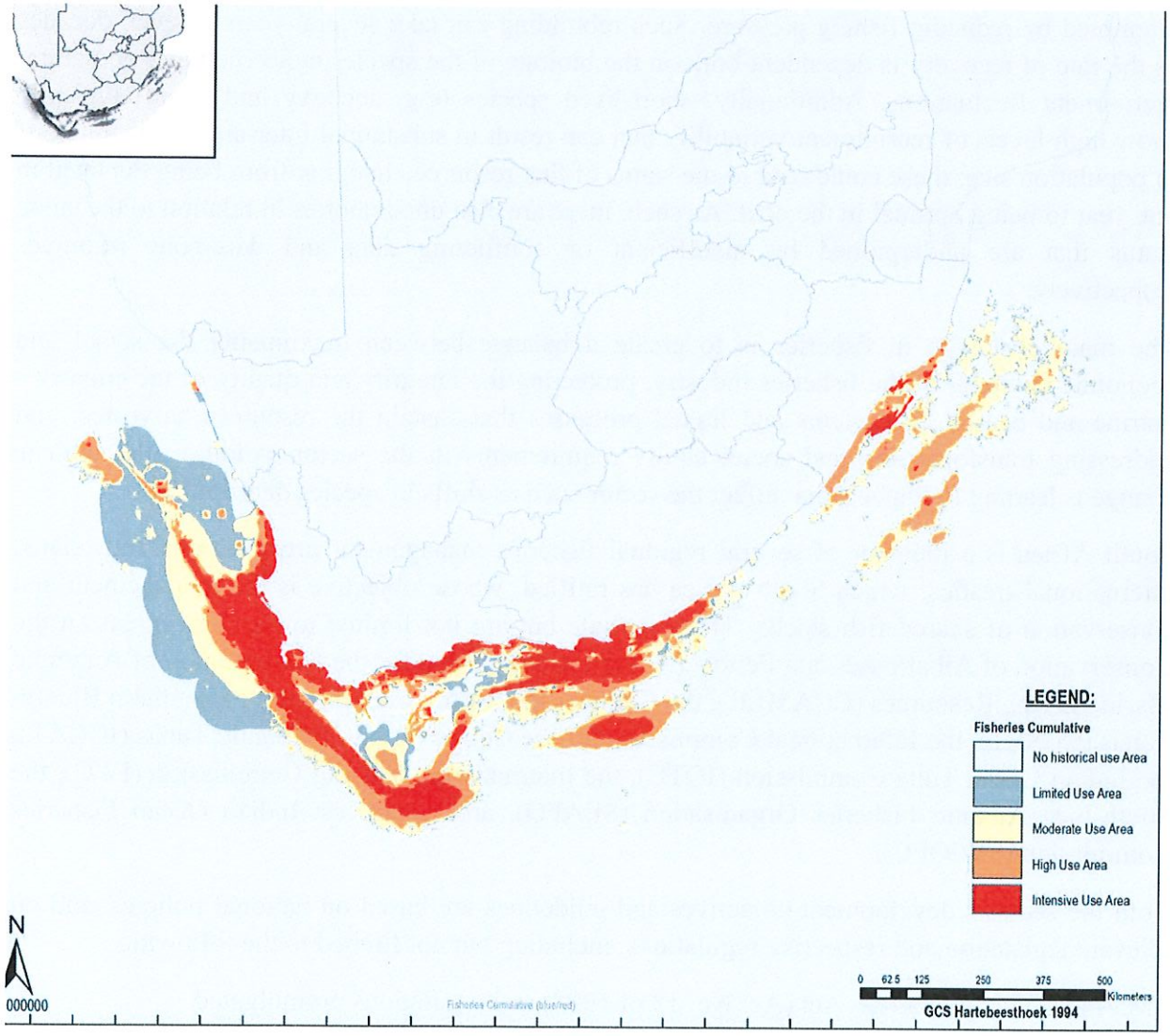
The main challenge in fisheries is to create a balance between maximising the social and economic potential of the fisheries industry, protecting the integrity and quality of the country's marine and coastal ecosystems and linked processes that sustain the resources harvested, and addressing transformation and social equity requirements in the sector. Additionally, climate change is leading to impacts that affect the sector such as shifts in species distribution.

South Africa is a member of several regional fisheries management organisations and related international treaties, which South Africa has ratified, whose objective is the management and conservation of shared fish stocks. These include but are not limited to the Agreement on the Conservation of Albatrosses and Petrels (ACAP), Commission for the Conservation of Antarctic Marine Living Resources (CCAMLR), the Commission for the Conservation of Southern Bluefin Tunas (CCSBT), the International Commission for the Conservation of Atlantic Tunas (ICCAT), the Indian Ocean Tuna Commission (IOTC), the International Whaling Commission (IWC), the South-East Atlantic Fisheries Organisation (SEAFO), and Southwest Indian Ocean Fisheries Commission (SWIOFC).

Both the sector's development objectives and guidelines are based on national policies, and on relevant legislation and respective regulations, including but not limited to the following:

- Marine Living Resources Act (Act No. 18 of 1998) and regulations promulgated
- Marine Living Resources Amendment (Act 5 of 2014)
- Policy for the Small-Scale Fisheries Sector in South Africa (2012)

- General Policy on the Allocation of Commercial Fishing Rights (2021 Gazette 45504)
- 2019 Declaration of Marine Protected Areas under Act 57 of 2003
- 2019 Regulations for the Management of Marine Protected Areas under Act 57 of 2003
- Act 87 of 1963 - Territorial Waters Act
- Act 98 of 1977 - Territorial Waters Amendment Act
- Maritime Zones Act 1994
- Convention on Biological Diversity (CBD)
- Convention on the Protection of the Underwater Cultural Heritage



CHAPTOR 13: STATE of the PROVINCE ADRESS

Premier Zamani Saul: Northern Cape State of the Province Address 2024

29 Feb 2024

State of the province address by the Premier of the Northern Cape, Dr Zamani Saul Kimberley,Frances Baard District 29 February 2024

Speaker of the Northern Cape Provincial Legislature, Ms Newrene Klaaste,
Deputy Speaker, Mr Mangaliso Matika,
Deputy Chairperson of the NCOP, Ms Sylvia Lucas
Minister for Public Service and Administration, Ms Noxolo Kieviet
Deputy Minister for the Department of International Relations and Cooperation, Mr Alvin Botes
Deputy Minister for Small Business, Mr Dipuo Peters Members of the Northern Cape Provincial Executive Council, The Chief Whip, Mr Neo Maneng,
The leader of the Opposition, Mr Harold McGluwa The Leader of the EFF, Mr Shadrack Tlhaole,
The leader of the Freedom Front Plus, Mr Danie Coetzee,
Members of the National Assembly and the National Councilof Provinces, Members of the Northern Cape Provincial Legislature,
Chairperson of the Provincial House of Traditional Leaders, Kgosi Pelonomi Toto and all our Traditional Leaders,
Members of the Diplomatic Corps,
Judge President of the Northern Cape High Court Division, Judge Pule Tlaletsi, Heads of State Security Services,
Chairperson of the South African Local Government Association Northern Cape,
Mayors and Councillors,
Traditional Leaders,
Heads of State Institutions supporting our Constitutional Democracy, The Director General and Heads of Departments & Government Officials, Provincial Secretary of the ANC and other political parties,
Leaders of the Alliance & Mass Democratic Movement Formations Leaders of Organised Labour, Business leaders, Members of the Media, Distinguished Guests,
Fellow citizens of the Northern Cape Ladies and Gentlemen

Madam Speaker, it is my distinct honour to deliver this State of the Province Address today, in a year in which we commemorate the 30th Anniversary of the democratic South Africa. That is a watershed moment in the struggle for political and economic freedom for all South Africans, particularly the black majority. This is a moment that

forces us to reflect on our path, that began on April 27, 1994, when many South Africans nationwide casted their votes for the first time. A vote that resulted in the birth of the Northern Cape Province, as one of the nine provinces that constitute the Republic of South Africa.

Madam Speaker, this is indeed an important year in the life of our promising constitutional order. Besides, the 30th Anniversary, South Africans will go to the polls on the 29th of May and I take this opportunity to encourage every resident of the Northern Cape to engage in this noble exercise of democracy by casting their vote. I am very optimistic that the voter turnout on election day, will exceed expectations as many young people have registered to exercise their democratic right.

Madam Speaker, this year, Iwas one of the participants in the debate on SONA and Ihighlighted that in 2020 the country and the entire world was engulfed by the COVID-19 pandemic, that same year our Honourable President Ramaphosa likened Gender Based Violence and Femicide to a second pandemic confronting our country. With these upcoming elections, we are confronted by a third pandemic called memory loss; In Afrikaans, s ons geheue verlies. The character Tintswalo, that the President spoke about serves to remind us that, despite all the challenges that the country is faced with, there are areas of serious progress.

Tintswalo, demonstrates the cumulative impact of Government policy interventions. This character represents the real life story of success of many young people, from impoverished backgrounds in our province. These are young people who benefitted from the rollout of various services since 1994 such as free access to healthcare, free public basic education, school nutrition, grants, free access to housing and tertiary education funding.

Today we have in our midst thirty young people who identify with the character Tintswalo. These are young people, whom with the assistance of the various government intervention programmes are now respected professionals and are making a positive contribution to society. Amongst them, we have doctors, Nurses, Engineers and Educators. We will continue to tell the story of Tintswalo because it is the story of this democracy, a good story to tell that resonates with the lives of many young people in the Northern Cape.

Madam Speaker, as we meet here today in Kimberley, we are aware of the challenges that are faced by Sol Plaatje Municipality in the recent years. One amongst them, is the water interruptions due to backlogs in the maintenance of ageing and inadequate infrastructure. Over the years, the Municipality was faced with an inadequate budget and that hindered its ability to properly maintain, repair or refurbish its water infrastructure.

The Municipality has put in place a plan of action to address these challenges. We are happy to announce that this year the National Treasury has approved funding of R2.5

billion through the Budget Facility for Infrastructure (BFI). This allocation is aimed at addressing infrastructure challenges. This funding will enable the municipality to embark on a comprehensive plan to upgrade the infrastructure, reduce water losses, and enhance water quality.

Linked to this, is our programme to accelerate housing delivery in Sol Plaatje Municipality. In addition to the R 365 million Hull Street Housing Project that I announced in the 2022 SOPA and is now under construction; an additional 1,000 houses will be built in this municipality for our people.

In partnership with Ekapa Mining; Sol Plaatje Municipality is working on the implementation of a 120MW combined Renewable Energy Project amounting to R2.4 Billion creating about 400 job opportunities.

Madam Speaker, Sol Plaatje Municipality is host to the Sol Plaatje University, a new university; which just celebrated its 10th Anniversary. SPU is the iconic landmark in Kimberley and continues to play a very important role in providing quality higher education, training, research and innovation in the province and the country at large.

This year, SPU experienced the largest intake of first-year students since its inception, with more than 2,000 first-year students. From an initial intake of 124 students in 2014, enrolment has now grown to over 5,000 students this year. What distinguishes this university from other universities in the country is the fact that it is an investment made by this democracy. This investment makes it possible for Kimberley to diversify its economic outlook from a mining city to a university city.

Madam Speaker, in 2019 we articulated a vision for the Province, to build a modern, growing and successful province. Driven by this vision, we successfully mobilised our stakeholders for support to steer the Province to greater heights. Ladies and Gentlemen, we now stand on the cusp of a binding vision that all of us can claim ownership of. During my Inaugural Address, I highlighted the tenets of a Modern, Growing and Successful Province.

In line with this vision, over the past five years we have shown our commitment towards addressing the challenges faced by our Province. As a result, we are approaching the end of the term of the Sixth Administration with greater optimism. This is but just the end of a term and not the end of the incumbency of the governing party.
Madam Speaker, the ANC as a governing party have worked relentlessly over the past 30 years to fundamentally alter the quality of lives of our people in the Northern Cape. As reflected in the Human Development Index {HDI) and the Census 2022 report, it is evident that we have achieved a lot. HDI is the combination of three basic dimensions of human development: A long and healthy life, knowledge and a decent standard of living.

In 1995 the Human Development Index (HDI) of the country was 0.66 and that was an indication of medium human development and now it is standing at 0.727, which is a high human development. During the past five years in the Northern Cape, there has been a noticeable increase in the HDIand the Northern Cape is now one of the six Provinces in the country with an HDI above 0.70.This reflects the strides that we have made in improving the quality of public education, public health and households' income.

Madam Speaker, ladies and gentlemen, we have indeed improved the quality public education and all indicators attest to that. The proportion of persons aged 5-24 who attended an education institution increased from 64,2% to 70,3% in 2022 in the Northern Cape; this represents the largest increase in attendance observed in all provinces. The percentage of persons aged 20 years and older with no schooling in the Northern Cape declined from 22,7% to 6,7% in 2022.

We have a total number of 554 public schools, including the 11 Special Needs Education schools, which accommodates about 310 000 learners in this year. The number of educators has increased from 9 270 in 2019 to about 9 600 in 2024. This all demonstrates our commitment to improve the quality of public education.

Madam Speaker, the school nutrition programme has a total of (276 088) two hundred and seventy-six and eighty-eight beneficiaries, which means that 90% of our learners receive a nutritious meal at our schools every day.

Our Grade 12 results show a positive growth in that in 2020 our matric pass rate was 66%, in 2021 it was 71.4%, in 2022 it was 74.2% and last year we have 75.8%. This is a cumulative increase of ten percent over the last four years. Our Matric results also shows an increase across all five (5) districts.

Madam Speaker, we noted with excitement the improvement in the quality of Grade 12 results from poor schools. Learners from no-fee paying schools accounted for almost 50% (48.3%) of the total bachelor passes obtained in 2023. Between 2019 and 2023, the number of quintile 1 to 3 learners with Bachelor passes increased by 9.8%.

This success is significant as the quality of the NSC pass determines access to bursaries or loans for further studying at a tertiary institution.

The Sixth Administration built 19 new state-of-the-art schools to the value of R600 Million and 8 are completed. Since 2019, we spent more than R274 Million for refurbishment, upgrades and maintenance work to 167 schools. Very important is our programme for sanitation upgrades which benefited 74 schools.

We call on our communities to continue to partner with us to promote the best interest of our schools and strive to ensure that our schools remain institutions of quality learning and teaching. You are therefore encouraged to form part of the School

Governing Body Elections that start on the 1st of March this year. We thank all the outgoing SGB's for their selfless commitment and their contribution in the governance of our schools in the Province.

Madam Speaker, we have indeed improved access to the provision of public healthcare services in the province, and all indicators attest to that. The overwhelming majority of Northern Cape household members (85% in 2022) continue to use public health systems as their first port of call.

The health profile has gradually increased in the Northern Cape with life expectancy increasing for both males and females; males saw an increase from 51 to 58 in 2023; females saw an increase from 56 to 65 during the same period.

The infant mortality in-facility rate decreased from 17.3% per 1000 live births to 16.1%. The maternal mortality rate was 109,9/100 000 in 2019 is reduced to 80/100 000 in 2023. This constitutes a major achievement against Sustainable Development Goal.

Madam Speaker, the improvement in healthcare provision to our people can largely be attributed to the quality and access to health services in our healthcare facilities across the Province. We have a total of 513 medical officers in the Province, of which 293 are at Robert Mangaliso Sobukwe Hospital here in Kimberley. The Department has a total of 2 539 nurses in different categories, spread across the province. To further strengthen our nursing capacity, the Department of Health continues to fund nurses to improve their skills.

Due to the decisive manner in which we managed the COVID-19 pandemic, the Northern Cape experienced the least number of deaths in the country. The improved Case Fatality Rate is a result of better patient care in our health facilities including early treatment-seeking behaviour by the communities.

The HIV positivity rate declined from 4,5% in 2018 to 2,4% in 2023. Care and treatment for people living with HIV, and retention of patients into Antiretroviral Treatment Therapy (ART) has improved significantly, and the number of people on treatment increased from 62 471 in March 2021 to 68 863 in 2023, representing a 10% increase.

Madam Speaker, since 2019 we have procured 146 new and better-equipped ambulances,50 patient transport vehicles and 6 emergency rescue vehicles. All to the value of more than R200 Million. This has enabled us to improve our EMS response time to 80% for Rural and Urban areas. This is consistent with the national target set for 80%.

We remain committed to improving the quality and access to healthcare in the Province. In this regard, we will make more resources available for healthcare infrastructure, ambulances, patient transport, staffing and medication.
Madam Speaker, ladies and gentlemen, I have another special guest in the gallery, Ntate

Sarel, who turned 100 years old last month on the 04th of January. He lived 70 years of his life under apartheid colonialism and 30 years in democracy. His life encapsulates the past, the transition and the present. He got his first old age grant when he turned 65 in 1989; because he was black he received only R131 once in two months.

This amount was by far less than the R372 that was received by his white peers on a monthly basis. In 1994 the democratic government removed this injustice, and all old age grant beneficiaries irrespective of their race received the same amount of R390 every month and now it stands at R2100. This is but one incident of the history of racial injustice that the democratic had to deal with.
Madam Speaker, social assistance through grants has been this democratic government's most effective poverty-reduction tool. In comparison. The number of social grant beneficiaries increased from (66 000) sixty-six thousand in 1994 to (538 447) five hundred and thirty-eight thousand four hundred and forty-seven in 2024.

As of August 2021 on average a total of one hundred and fifty thousand unemployed people benefited from the Social Relief of Distress Grant at a value of more than R1.5 Billion in the past three years.

The implementation of pro-poor policies by this government is beyond question and is unparalleled. On top of all these interventions, we have more than 267, 000 learners benefitting from the National School Nutrition Programme, 26 539 benefitting from learner transport and 74,4% of the schools declared as No-Fee Schools.

Honourable Members, Ladies and Gentlemen, according to the latest Quarterly Labour Force Survey (QLFS) released by StatsSA, the unemployment rate for the Northern Cape is still the second lowest (26.9%) in the country. Job increases were recorded in the following sectors Agriculture (5 000), Mining 10 000 and Energy (4000).

The number of employed persons during the 2nd Quarter of 2020 was 255,000 and now in 2023 we have 329,000 employed people in the province, which is the highest ever.This represents 74 000 increase in the number of employed people. As we move forward into the Seventh Administration, we need to strengthen our response to unemployment and create more jobs for the people of the Northern Cape.

Madam Speaker, when the sixth administration assumed office in 2019 the Provincial economy was estimated at R119 billion and it is now estimated at R 148 billion as of 2023, highlighting an increase of R 29,6 billion, in four years. This growth in the GDP demonstrates the collaborative efforts by the Provincial Government and the private sector to grow the economy. The resurgence in the provincial economy during 2021, was at the back of a robust mining sector, which recorded growth of around 18% largely due to a surge in commodity prices and investments in renewable energy.

Madam Speaker, the provincial government is the province's single biggest procurer of goods and services. Through preferential procurement, we are contributing towards

redressing the economic imbalances of the past as well as stimulating and promoting local economic development. The total spent on goods and services by the Sixth administration amounts to R25.97 billion.

The preferential procurement spending on woman-owned suppliers amounts to R5,03 billion (19,37%), youth-owned suppliers R1,48 billion (5,68%), and people living with disabilities owned suppliers R51,03 million (0,2%). Spending on black-owned suppliers amounted to R15,08 billion (58%) during the sixth administration.

The Provincial Government has spent an amount of R13,83 billion (53,26%) on small businesses (SMEs), aiming to advance economic growth and employment in the province. This commitment to empowering our local suppliers continues by ensuring that suppliers are paid timeously for services rendered, within 30 days and in most instances less than 30 days.

Madam Speaker, these figures prove that our democratic dispensation is on a positive trajectory in changing the lives of the people of the Northern Cape. We have observed improvements in access to basic services with the province's performance for access to water, electricity and sanitation consistently being above the national average. This is further reflected in the Census 2022 report which indicates that the number of households with formal dwellings increased from 78,3% to 85,9% in 2022.
The total number of households that have access to onsite piped water (either inside the dwelling or yard) increased to 82% in 2022; the percentage of households that had no access to piped water in the Province declined from 19,7% to 8,7% in 2022. The total amount of households that had access to electricity as a main source of lighting increased to 92,5% in 2022, all the municipalities in the Northern Cape have more than 80% of their households having access to electricity as a main source of lighting in 2022. The total number of households in the Northern Cape that have access to flush toilets increased to 73,0% in 2022. This indicates a huge improvement in the provision of basic services.

Madam Speaker, in our pursuit to modernise the Province, we stated that such a Province must have connected residents. The internet is a vital resource to access information and to communicate with others. Households' access to the internet from anywhere in the Northern Cape increased from 16.2% in 2010 to 68,5% in 2022.
Broadband generation in the Northern Cape is at 70%.
Madam Speaker, Honourable members, Ladies and Gentlemen, last year, we announced the close to R1 Billion investment in broadband infrastructure and base stations by our operators, Vodacom, Telkom and MTN as well as the work on the

development of a Provincial Broadband Strategy. As a result of the social compact and collaborative initiatives with these mobile operators, the Northern Cape's cellular network coverage stands at 98%. We are pleased to announce that we have completed the broadband strategy, and the development of an implementation plan is underway.

Madam Speaker, we have conceptualised a digital Thusong App and I am happy to announce the completion of phase 1 of the development. On completion of this project, it will put under one roof the online services of the various Government Departments. Honourable members, Ladies and Gentlemen, Over the past five years, we have made significant progress with Modernising the education and health sector in the Province. Education in the Northern Cape experienced ground-breaking transformation over the past five years in an era marked by rapid technological advancements. We have introduced an online registration system and this makes placement of learners seamless. The online admission system was launched in August 2020 and currently caters for grade 1 and 8 learners.

To date, all 554 public ordinary schools; including 11 Special Needs Education schools, have connectivity for administrative purposes. We are continuing through the SA Connect programme to connect schools for teaching and learning. To date, a total of 98 schools in the Pixley Ka Seme District have been connected. Efforts are underway to ensure that all schools are connected for teaching and learning in our Province.

As part of modernising our education system, 12,000 tablets; loaded with offline Edu Kite software, were distributed to Grade 12 learners last year. This year we are expanding the programme with the procurement of tablets for Grade 10 and 11 learners, which will commence 1st April 2024.

A total of one hundred and seventy-three (173) schools have been identified for the Coding and Robotics Pilot, of which fifteen 15 are between Grades R to 3, hundred and eleven (111} are between Grades 4 to 7, and forty-seven (47) are between Grades 8 to 9.

Five (5) classrooms, one in each district, have been converted into cyber labs and fitted with state-of-the-art 41R equipment, including coding, robotics, and virtual reality resources.

Madam Speaker, libraries play a crucial role in society for access to free educational resources, safe sanctuaries for learning, economic support, language learning and much more. To date, 215 out of 223 community libraries have been connected to free internet in the province.

All our youth service centres now serve as Wi-Fi Hotspots for young people to access Internet services.

Madam Speaker, in pursuing a-health we have connectivity to 91% (145/159) of all health facilities, an electronic dispatch system at the two EMS call centres has been initiated. The Botshelo App will be used for vehicle tracking systems in ambulances. In 2018 we moved from manual systems to various automated Hospital Systems which assist in managing Revenue, Patient Visits and tracking patients from where they receive the services and avoid the patients duplicating access to health care services.

Madam Speaker, through the Vaalharts Agricultural Distribution Centre {VADC) and Farm Smart Technology, the province intends to organise and structure support, logistics and marketing hub, utilising modernised technologies for increased access to high-yield markets for emerging farmers, as well as selected commercial farmers.

Madam Speaker, our total spending on public infrastructure, which includes hospitals, clinics, schools, libraries, roads and human settlements since 2019 to date is R14.8 billion. This reflects an unprecedented level of spending on infrastructure in the Province.
Madam Speaker, road infrastructure remains the province's priority to create seamless access to economic opportunities and improve people's mobility. We reported in the last SOPA that we will transfer some of our strategic road networks to SANRAL and that process has been finalised. Currently, SANRAL has a footprint of 4 409 kilometres of which 952 kilometres were recently incorporated with more roads to be transferred shortly.

Madam Speaker, since the implementation of the Operation Vala Zonke programme; to date, the Province can report that 23 334 potholes have been fixed and this was achieved through the utilisation of internal maintenance teams.

Since 2019 through the Human Settlements Development Grant, we have invested almost R 1. 5 billion to provide housing to our people. This commitment to providing quality housing is evident in the bold step that we have undertaken to pilot a unique funding model, that enabled us to launch the R1 Billion Housing Project, which is the single biggest investment in human settlements in the Northern Cape.

This will accelerate the pace of the provision of houses for the poor. The R1 Billion Rand Housing Project is based on the fact that there are approximately 18,000 serviced sites ready for the construction of houses throughout the Northern Cape Province.

Through the implementation of key catalytic projects which include amongst others, the Namakwa Special Economic Zone (SEZ) that will be launched in April this year; Boegoeberg se Baai Port; the Green Hydrogen Project and the Kathu Industrial Park, we will ensure that our objective of growing the economy is realised. In preparation for our Port development, we have sent five young people from the Province to Vietnam to study Marine Engineering at the Maritime University.

Madam Speaker, the Honourable President, His Excellency Cyril Ramaphosa initiated the annual Presidential Investment Conference to realise R 1,2 trillion investment over five years. Since its inception in 2018, to date, R 1,14 trillion worth of investment has been realised by South Africa. A substantial amount of this investment was made in the Northern Cape amounting to R 70 Billion with key investments in the energy and mining sector.

Major investments in the Province thus far include amongst others, commitments from Vedanta, PMG, Orion, Unigreen, SCATEC and ACWA to mention but a few.

The Northern Cape is at the forefront of driving investment in green energy. As a Province, we have launched a Green Hydrogen Masterplan. This highlights the need for substantial infrastructure development, leveraging the province's renewable energy resources and strategic location to drive economic growth and exports. A noteworthy milestone is the completion of the pre-feasibility study with very positive results.

Madam Speaker, through focused partnership efforts in key areas, we have together with mining houses made significant strides investing about R690 Million in education, healthcare, environmental sustainability, economic development, water and infrastructure enhancement as well as roads.

Madam Speaker, the South African Government is in the process of commercializing Cannabis. To date, there are nine (9) Hemp permit applications from the Northern Cape and four (4) have been approved for Hemp permits. It is expected that the number of Hemp permit holders from the Northern Cape will increase with time.

We welcome the registration of Karoo Lamb as a South African Geographical Indication (GI) under the Agricultural Product Standard Act, Act 119 of 1990 on the 27th of October 2023. This protects the name Karoo Lamb under designations of origin and will have economic spin-offs in the local and international markets. The Northern Cape is one of three provinces producing Karoo lamb and this GI designation should benefit farmers in terms of the farm gate price.

Madam Speaker, the Northern Cape is leading the way in land reform in South Africa. Since 1994 to date about 1, 600 000 million hectares have been redistributed to the value of R 1.6 billion, benefitting 1,183 women and 711 young people. With regard to land restitution, 658,000 hectares of land were given back to our communities benefitting 26 054 households comprising 137 430 beneficiaries to the value of R 934 million. In addition, R 1.4 billion was spent on financial compensation. This brings the total expenditure on land restitution to R 2.3 billion.

So, Madam Speaker, the total spent on both the land redistribution and restitution programme in the province amounts to R4 Billion and involves about 2.3 million hectares of land to about 200, 000 beneficiaries.

Madam Speaker, on land tenure we have secured tenure rights for the communities of Leliefontein, Concordia and Richtersveld through the Transformation of Certain Rural Areas Act (TRANCRAA). Five hundred and fifty-one thousand five hundred and ten (551 510) hectares have been transferred to the affected communities.

Madam Speaker, since 2021, the province has experienced outbreaks of veld fires, especially in the ZFM, JTG and Frances Baard districts. The intergovernmental relations

of all stakeholders including national departments have greatly improved to the extent that the province now has Fire Protection Associations in all districts registered by the Department of Forestry, Fisheries and Environment. As the Province we have assisted affected farmers with fodder from our fodder bank.

Madam Speaker, since 2019 to date the implementation of the EPWP Phase IV, resulted in the Province creating 84 594 (81%) jobs by Q3: 2023/24 against the 5-year target of 104 031. Similarly, we have exceeded our targets for the Community Works Programme for the period 2019/20 to 2022/23 with performance at 103% and a total of 76 086 job opportunities created.

To address the issue of youth unemployment and building on the achievements of the Expanded Public Works Programme, the Government introduced the Presidential Employment Stimulus three years ago. To this end, as a Province, we have appointed twenty-six thousand and sixty-one (26 061) young people.

Furthermore, the Northern Cape provincial government in partnership with the SETAs continues to provide young people with skills development programmes such as Internships, Leanerships, Artisanships, Apprenticeships, Work Integrated Learning and Skills Programmes.
Together with MERSETA, we will be launching the skills development and bursary programme amounting to R210 million benefitting 2,000 young people. Since 2019 our partnership with SETAS has benefitted a total of 14 800) young people.

To improve coordination and to ensure that we offer bursaries to deserving students in line with the scarce and critical skills needed for the economy of the province, a centralised bursary model was adopted by this administration and bursaries were located within the Office of the Premier. This resulted in the writing-off of student debt, to the value of R154 million, which was awarded through study loans. Through our centralised bursary scheme, we have assisted a total of 530 beneficiaries. All of these combined efforts have resulted in a steady decrease in youth Not in Employment, Education and Training (NEET) in the Province.

The Northern Cape Construction Company was launched in August 2022 with 50 employees selected for a CETA learnership programme covering Road Construction Level 3. Currently, 38 employees remain in the programme. From mid-April 2023 to December 2023 have been fixing potholes. This first intake will shortly conclude with an enterprise mentorship programme, and the second intake will be in the next financial year.

Madam Speaker, as this Sixth Administration we have committed ourselves to sound and prudent financial management and governance. In 2019 we inherited two clean audits; 7 financially unqualified and 4 unqualified audit opinions. Through deliberate efforts, we turned the situation around and can now report the following progress:

- There are now 5 clean audits, which represents a 150% improvement on what we inherited;
- Two departments namely Economic Development and Tourism and Education, which we inherited in the qualified audit space have improved. The Department of Education, a key service delivery department, which accounts for about 40% of our provincial budget, improved from qualified to financially unqualified during the sixth administration.

Madam Speaker, ladies and gentlemen, throughout our term, we ensured no provincial department was in a disclaimer audit space. The clean audit goal in all provincial departments is still alive and we are committed to doing more towards attaining it.

Madam Speaker, it is also important to announce to this sitting that for the past three years in succession we have closed the exchequer account on a positive bank balance. This attainment inspires confidence in the management of provincial finances. We could only achieve this because of our unwavering commitment to cut the executive frills and wastages in the system. Iforgone some benefits as Premier and equally so, the MEC did the same.

Madam Speaker, in terms of the Municipal Audit Outcomes 2021/22, the province has noted improvement in the audit outcomes of municipalities since the start of the sixth administration. The number of municipalities with clean audits increased from one (1) to four (4) from 2018/19 to 2021/22.

Furthermore, the number of municipalities with disclaimers reduced from seven (7) to four (4) in the same period. Throughout the years, clean audits were only achieved by the district municipalities; however, Hantam Municipality changed the narrative by becoming the first local municipality in the Province to obtain a clean audit for two (2) consecutive years i.e., 2020/21 and 2021/22 financial years. The audit for the 2022/23 cycle is currently ongoing and the province is looking forward to achieving even better outcomes.

We continue to strive to maintain the positive trajectory on improved audits through Operation Clean Audit {OPCA) which steers integrated improvements, coupled with targeted intervention through the Municipal Support Intervention Plans {MSIP). Already we have seen an improvement between 2020/21 and 2022/23 financial years on the State of Local Government. Further improvement will be supported through a Multi-Disciplinary Team, inclusive of SOEs, Government departments and SALGA for focused support to municipalities.

We have remained committed to reducing corruption and to this end, we have embarked on Lifestyle Audits across all Provincial departments in conjunction with the Special Investigations Unit (SIU).As part of our fight against corruption in the Public Service several people are facing charges and others have been convicted.

Ladies and Gentlemen, we have demonstrated our collective effort inthe fight against corruption. The establishment of the Provincial SIU Offices is our clearest demonstration of our commitment to fight the scourge of corruption.

Madam Speaker, ladies and gentlemen, to build a capable and developmental state is critical for the realisation of people-centred development. Consequently, over the years' government has systematically introduced enabling levers including legislation, policies, and programmes.

To ensure the acceleration of our initiatives to build capacity we re-launched the Human Resource Development {HRD) Council last year, which is a multi-stakeholder advisory board which consists of representatives from government, labour, and civil society aimed at increasing the skills base of our youth. The Council will provide strategic leadership and direction for addressing human resource development challenges as well as to drive the skills agenda designed to be inclusive.

Madam Speaker, as part of our commitment to ensure that Government further in sources security guards and cleaners, this year we have launched the first phase which will see the migration of the security function for the Provincial Government under the Department of Transport, Safety and Liaison. This will be followed by incremental insourcing which will soon see the advertising of 150 security officer posts.

Our absorption rate has seen significant improvement as far as the advertising and filling of vacant posts in the Administration is concerned. In 2021/2022 we had a vacancy rate of 13.01%, to date our vacancy rate for all Departments stands at 7.82% against the national norm of 10%, which augurs well for good governance in our Province.

Madam Speaker, ladies and gentlemen, as announced in the previous SOPA, a Ministry responsible for seamless coordination of Youth development, is in place and hit the ground running. Significantly, a lot has been achieved since the establishment of the Ministry. During this reporting period, an intense benchmarking process was undertaken with the Department of Women, Youth and Persons with Disabilities to streamline and re-orientate the provincial operations.

To this end, the Northern Cape Integrated Youth Development Strategy has been finalised. The strategy ensures coherent and meaningful implementation of the National Youth Policy 2020-2023. Several programmes have been implemented that benefit our designated groups such as the appointment of Media Attaches, Vota Lutsha Brigade, the introduction of the Youth and Women Development Fund and the Unboxing Basha programme.

Madam Speaker, to deal with the social ills of Gender-Based Violence and Femicide, which the Honourable President Ramaphosa referred to as the second pandemic we formed an Interdepartmental Task Team to tackle Teenage pregnancy, GBVF, and

substance abuse in the province and a strategy has been developed and adopted which is currently being implemented. The programme was established for the monitoring of GBVF hotspots supported by intervention programmes and further expanded services to victims of gender-based violence in collaboration with the NPA by establishing two more Thuthuzela Care Centres in Springbok in the Namakwa District and Upington in the ZF Mgcawu.

Madam Speaker, for the third quarter of 202312024, sexual offences decreased by 5.9%, attempted murder by 2.6%, common assault by 5.6% and rape by 5.5%.

Northern Cape is amongst the first provinces which have successfully managed to establish a Victim Empowerment Shelter in all 5 Districts of the Province. Two shelters were established in 2023, one in Nababeep and the other in Ritchie. We remain cognisant of the social challenges experienced by the youth of the Province and will draw on our social partners, NGO and community structures to tackle this head-on.

The fight against alcohol and drug abuse needs a multipronged approach, with efforts aimed at improving parenting practices, spiritual care, knowledge, influence and a healthy mind. Developing youth and keeping them constructively engaged through social cohesion and developmental programmes will remain our focus.

During this sixth Administration, we have worked tirelessly to grow the economy and to this end, we have positioned the Northern Cape as the hub for renewable and green energy. Huge gains have been made in laying the foundation for the Province to build a Modern, Growing and Successful Province to improve the quality of lives of our people, which includes tackling the challenges of unemployment, poverty and inequality.

We will continue to leverage these mammoth gains and advance people-centred development. We remain committed to investing in improving the quality of our health and education in the Province as our apex priorities.

Madam Speaker, Ladies and Gentlemen, besides presenting to your good selves a picture of our major achievements and accomplishments for the past three decades of our emancipation, we have also presented factual statistics that attest to our collective determination to reduce the debilitating effects of unemployment. The Northern Cape has the second-lowest unemployment rate in the country.

Moreover, Madam Speaker, we presented comprehensive details of our endeavours in growing the provincial economy. The information we have presented has been independently verified and we continue to engage in projects that will benefit the provincial economy.

In our modernisation efforts, the current Administration in close collaboration with our partners; we are succeeding in living up to our vision of building a Modem, Growing and

Successful province, especially in the areas of broadband technology, e-health, e-commerce and a-education.

Madam Speaker, our increased funding and investment in both social and economic infrastructure has yielded positive results. Aligned to this, is the sustained improvement in our Grade 12 outcomes during our term of office.

Ladies and Gentlemen, the youth in our province continue to benefit from various projects and programmes we have initiated. As a result of the training opportunities that we provide; our youth are in a much better position to access gainful employment.

We made a commitment to work hard towards having a soccer team in the Premier Soccer League (PSL) division. We could not achieve this but we can report that we now have two teams in the National First Division, Hungry Lions FC and Upington City FC. We also have a ladies' team in the top echelon of ladies' football in the country, the Richmond Ladies. For the past two years, we spent about R14 million in support of these three teams. Our dream to have a team in the PSL is very much alive.

Madam Speaker, as part of maintaining and improving our public infrastructure we will make available R30 million for the renovation of Mayibuye Centre. Similarly, we have also allocated R10 million for upgrades at the AR Abbass stadium in Kimberley.
We also introduced various measures to improve the audit outcomes, and better audit results were achieved. We will not rest until every Provincial Government entity receives a clean audit. There can be no other way.

Itake this opportunity to thank the people of the Northern Cape for theirfaith and trust in this governing collective and we remain confident that after 29 May you will once more be part of our journey in building a Northern Cape that will be characterised by prosperity, a transparent and progressive government.

Madam Speaker, a special work of gratitude goes to my family, they saw me hustling for this province to the best of my ability. I tried my best, and Iaccept it that to some people my best was not enough. But that does not mean that we must stop doing our best. With your support I believe the province is on a much better development trajectory. Thanks again for your support and love.

As I close, Madam Speaker, when Iwas in high school I used to write poems, I lost my bundle of poems when Iwas at university. Since then, I got very discouraged and never wrote any thereafter. For the first time this Tuesday, Isummoned extraordinary guts to write one, and Idid. The title of the poem is: IN MY UNGOODNESS

Mine was an ungood conception

But a beautiful moment for my mom to celebrate the fertility of her fragile eggs and the incubation strength of her godly womb,

Birthing pains and splattering blood were beautiful signatures of life As without pain and blood, there is no life I was an ungood baby

But one that signified the unending symmetry of life The captivating mixture of cries and smiles,
The moment that glorifies the motherly duty of dipping one's hands in poo as a sign of intricate love.
Mine, was an ungood upbringing

But a fulfilling adolescent, and youthful life Despite, the grinding poverty and hardship
I was showered with true love and affection from a lioness that never betrayed her duty of motherly care
In my ungoodness, I've learnt that the beauty of life is not in worldly possessions

But innate capacity to love and appreciate small priceless things like respect for others, humility and compassion.
Iwas, an ungood student

But one that embraced the beauty of learning, the fruits of discipline and hard work

In my ungoodness, I shunned the tribulations of short cuts, diligently completed tasks and respected my elders.
In my ungoodness, Istarted to feel the glory of achievements as I migrated seamlessly from one grade to the other.
Iwas, an ungood activist

But a caring individual, that appreciated the different talents of his comrades for collective agency to change the world
In that ungoodness, I saw people working in teams, closing ranks and prepared to sacrifice their lives for each other.
Now, I am, an ungood Premier

But I appreciate every moment to serve the people of this beautiful province In that ungoodness, on many occasions,
I spoke to the many vulnerable people in the Karoo, Kgalagadi, kalahari, Namakwa and Teemane
Who dutifully collected their grants every month Who otherwise would have nothing
In my ungoodness, Ifelt the pounding hearts of recipients of RDP houses

Iwitnessed the jubilation of rural children as they take their first steps into new state of the art class rooms
I've seen the quizzical smiles of communities when for the first time they had piped water in their yards and decent sanitation
I've witnessed community excitements for new clinics

I've touched the pondering hearts of youngsters who just got their first employment

In my ungoodness, I can still feel the smell of the new-borns delivered in our public hospitals
Vivid in my memory, is the futuristic smiles on their mothers,

Telling a story, that in this ungoodness there is an unmatched good.

I've seen the tears of joy, of hopeless youngsters who were given opportunities to further their studies
In my ungoodness, Ispoke to young addicts whose lives were changed for the better My ungoodness, is not badness
But is awarrior life of vigor in a world contrived with deceit, duplicity and double-dealing

My ungoodness, is life of action, in a world where human energy is colonised by the fear of tomorrow
My ungoodness, is life of movement, in a world where everything tends to be immobile

My ungoodness, is life of being abused, in a world where idiots have stolen primacy in public discourse
My ungoodness, is a life of heavy-lifting and strife

My ungoodness, is a life of many failures that are spiced with profound successes

Simply put, my ungoodness; is a life of ceaseless and sincere efforts, to live meaningfully

Thank you Honourable Speaker

THE BUDGET SPEECH

% Budget balance -347.4 -332.4 -295.0 -274.2 -4.9% -4.5% -3.7% -3.3% Gross domestic product 7 049.0 7 452.2 7 913.8 8 422.3 CONSOLIDATED GOVERNMENT EXPENDITURE BY FUNCTION R billion 2023/24 2024/25 2025/26 2026/27 2023/24– 2026/27 Revised estimate Medium-term estimates Average growth Learning and culture 468.4 480.6 499.3 525.8 3.9% Health 267.3 271.9 281.1 295.2 3.4% Social development 368.5 387.3 385.0 398.9 2.7% Community development 251.5 265.3 274.9 287.1 4.5% Economic development 239.8 255.4 274.9 288.4 6.3% Peace and security 236.8 244.0 254.5 266.5 4.0% General public services 76.9 74.7 77.5 79.3 1.0% Payments for financial assets 3.5 2.6 2.0 1.8 Allocated expenditure 1 912.7 1 981.8 2 049.1 2 143.1 3.9% Debt-service costs 356.1 382.2 414.7 440.2 7.3% Contingency reserve – 5.0 7.6 14.5 Consolidated expenditure 2 268.9 2 369.0 2 471.4 2 597.8 4.6% B

STATE of the NATION ADDRESS

President Cyril Ramaphosa: 2024 State of the Nation Address

08 Feb 2024

State of the Nation Address by President Cyril Ramaphosa, Cape Town City Hall

Speaker of the National Assembly, Ms Nosiviwe Mapisa-Nqakula,
Chairperson of the National Council of Provinces, Mr Amos Masondo,
Deputy President of the Republic of South Africa, Mr Paul Mashatile and Mrs Mashatile,
Former President Thabo Mbeki,
Former Deputy President Phumzile Mlambo-Ngcuka,
Former Speaker of the National Assembly, Ms Baleka Mbete, Chief Justice Raymond Zondo,
Deputy Chief Justice Ms Mandisa Maya,
Various justices who are here at present,
Mayor of Cape Town, Councillor Geordin Hill-Lewis,
Dean of the Diplomatic Corps and Regional Deans,
Heads of Institutions Supporting our Democracy,
Eminent Persons representing our nine provinces,
Members of Parliament, and
Fellow South Africans,

As we were preparing for this State of the Nation Address (SoNA), we were deeply saddened to hear of the tragic passing of Dr Hage Geingob, the President of the Republic of Namibia.

President Geingob was a dear friend to me and of the South African people and a comrade in arms in the Struggle for our freedom. He was a champion of African peace, unity , progress and development.

May I ask that we observe a moment of silence in his honour.

Fellow South Africans,

This SoNA takes place in the 30th year of our democracy.

On 27 April 1994, millions of South Africans cast their ballot in a democratic election, many for the first time in their lives.

That momentous day was the culmination of centuries of struggle, the struggle to liberate our people from suffering and oppression, from dispossession and exploitation, from poverty and inequality.

As we stood in the long, winding queues to vote, we turned to one another and spoke of our joy and sometimes with tears running down our cheeks.

We embraced friends and strangers alike, encouraged by a sense of a common future that we were about to determine for our country with our vote.

We placed into those ballot boxes not just a vote, but a dream of the country we wanted to build.

It was the dream of a South Africa that, in every sense, belongs to all who live in it, united in our diversity.

The world watched as Nelson Mandela, the father of our nation, cast his vote in Inanda in KwaZulu-Natal; the land of uShaka, a hero whose name echoes across the ages; the birthplace of John Langalibalele Dube, the first President of the ANC, which united the African people; and the home of Chief Albert Luthuli, the first African Nobel Peace Prize Laureate.

In many ways, his voting in Inanda at the place where John Langalibalele Dube is buried, was symbolic because through casting his vote there, he was reporting back to the first President of the ANC on how far the struggle had been prosecuted.

After casting his ballot, Madiba said:

"This is the beginning of a new era. We have moved from an era of pessimism, division, limited opportunities, turmoil and conflict. We are starting a new era of hope, reconciliation and nation building."

It is this dream, of a free and united people, that is woven into our democratic Constitution.

It is this Constitution that has guided our collective efforts over the last three decades to fundamentally change our country for the better, and it must stand at the centre of the work we do now to build a better life for all.

Over the last three decades, we have been on a journey, striving together to achieve a new society – a national democratic society.

We have cast off the tyranny of apartheid and built a democratic state based on the will of the people.

We have established strong institutions to protect the fundamental freedoms and human rights of all people.

We have transformed the lives of millions of South Africans, providing the necessities of life and creating opportunities that never existed before.

We have enabled a diverse economy whose minerals, agricultural products and manufactured goods reach every corner of the world, while creating jobs in South Africa.

As a country, we have returned to the community of nations, extending a hand of peace and friendship to all countries and all people.

Just as we cannot deny the progress South Africans have made over the last 30 years, nor should we diminish the severe challenges that we continue to face.

We have endured times of great difficulty, when the strength of our constitutional democracy has been severely tested.

There have been times when events beyond our borders have held back our progress.

The global financial crisis of 2007 and 2008 brought to an end, a decade of strong growth and faster job creation.

More recently, the Russia-Ukraine conflict has contributed to rising prices of fuel, food and other goods across the world – and has, as a result, made life more difficult for all South Africans.

There have also been times when events at home have shaken the foundations of our constitutional democracy.

Perhaps the greatest damage was caused during the era of state capture.

For a decade, individuals at the highest levels of the State conspired with private individuals to take over and repurpose state-owned companies, law-enforcement agencies and other public institutions.

In some cases, these activities were enabled by local and multinational companies.

Billions of rands that were meant to meet the needs of ordinary South Africans were stolen. Confidence in our country was badly eroded. Public institutions were severely weakened.

The effects of state capture continue to be felt across society, from the shortage of freight locomotives to crumbling public services, from the poor performance of our power stations to failed development projects.

But South Africans, including many honest and dedicated public officials, fought back and worked together to defeat state capture.

Even then, attempts to thwart the country's recovery continued.

We recall with great anguish the events of July 2021, when individuals loyal to their own interests sought to provoke a popular insurrection, leading to a tragic loss of life and widespread destruction.

Again, they were unsuccessful.

These efforts to undo the hard-won gains of our freedom failed because the people of South Africa stood firm, together, in defence of our Constitution and its promise of a better life for all.

It was the same determination that enabled the country to endure the devastation of COVID-19, the worst global pandemic in over a century.

More than 100 000 South Africans lost their lives to the disease and two million people lost their jobs.

Yet, it would have been far worse if we had not acted together as one to stop the spread of the virus, to support our health workers, to protect the most vulnerable, and to roll out an unprecedented vaccination programme.

We were able to unite society around a common effort to save lives and livelihoods.

I want to pay tribute to the many thousands of South Africans who made financial contributions to the Solidarity Fund, to the workers who produced medical supplies, and to the nurses, doctors and other health workers who risked their lives to care for those who were ill.

Another major challenge we had to address is gender-based violence and femicide (GBVF) which we characterised as the second pandemic.

As government, we have introduced laws and directed more resources to prosecuting perpetrators, providing better support to survivors, and promoting women's economic empowerment.

As a society, we must intensify our collective efforts to bring GBVF to an end.

In recent years, the country has had to confront the effects of climate change.

We have had devastating wildfires in the Western Cape, destructive floods in KwaZulu-Natal, unbearable heatwaves in the Northern Cape, persistent drought in the Eastern Cape, and intense storms in Gauteng.

Much of the task of this administration was to get our country through these great challenges and to work to regain our way.

While each of these events has left its mark, our country has weathered every storm. Yes, we have the scars to show. But in every case South Africans have been resolute. We have not only persevered, but we have come back stronger and more determined.

All these efforts have demonstrated how South Africans value the freedom that was won after decades of struggle.

The story of the first 30 years of our democracy can be best told through the life of a child called Tintswalo born at the dawn of freedom in 1994.

Tintswalo – democracy's child – grew up in a society that was worlds apart from the South Africa of her parents, grandparents and great-grandparents.

She grew up in a society governed by a constitution rooted in equality, the rule of law, and affirmation of the inherent dignity of every citizen.

Tintswalo, and many others born at the same time as her, were beneficiaries of the first policies of the democratic State to provide free health-care for pregnant women and children under the age of six.

Tintswalo's formative years were spent in a house provided by the State, one of millions of houses built to shelter the poor.

Tintswalo grew up in a household provided with basic water and electricity, in a house where her parents were likely to have lived without electricity before 1994.

Tintswalo was enrolled in a school in which her parents did not have to pay school fees, and each school day she received a nutritious meal as part of a programme that today supports nine million learners from poor families.

The democratic State provided a Child Support Grant to meet her basic needs. This grant, together with other forms of social assistance, continues to be a lifeline for more than 26 million South Africans every month.

With this support, Tintswalo – democracy's child – was able to complete high school.

Through the assistance of the National Student Financial Aid Scheme, Tintswalo attended one of our Technical Vocational Education and Training (TVET) colleges and obtained a qualification.

When Tintswalo entered the world of work, she was able to progress and thrive with the support of the State's employment equity and Black Economic Empowerment policies.

With the income she earned, she was able to save, to start a family, to move into a better house, and to live a better life.

This is the story of millions of people who have been born since the dawn of our democracy. But it is only part of the story.

Fo0,r despite the remarkable achievements of the last 30 years, many of democracy's children still face great challenges.

Millions of young people aged 15 to 24 years are currently not in employment, education or training.

There are many who have a matric, a diploma or a degree who cannot find a job, or do not have the means to start a business.

While economic growth is essential to reduce unemployment, we cannot wait to provide the work that many of democracy's children need.

As government we have taken steps to address the youth unemployment challenge.

Three years ago, building on the success of the Expanded Public Works Programme, we launched the Presidential Employment Stimulus.

Through this programme, we have created more than 1.7 million work and livelihood opportunities.

Through the stimulus, we have placed more than one million school assistants in 23 000 schools, providing participants with valuable work experience while improving learning outcomes.

Through the Presidential Youth Employment Intervention, we established SAYouth.mobi as a zero-rated platform for unemployed young people to access opportunities for learning and earning.

Over 4.3 million young people are now engaged on the network and 1.6 million have so far secured opportunities.

We have, working together with the National Youth Development Agency (NYDA), set up a number of initiatives to provide opportunities for young people including the National Youth Service and the Youth Employment Service.

These programmes matter because work matters to people. The NYDA has played a key role in assisting a number of young people, to start their own businesses.

Having a job does not only provide an income – it is fundamental to people's sense of self-worth, dignity, hope, purpose and inclusion.

From the depths of deprivation and inequality, we have worked over 30 years to ensure that all South Africans have an equal chance to prosper.

It is not enough to recognise the injustices of the past; we need to correct them.

We have introduced laws and undertaken programmes to enable black South Africans and women to advance in the workplace, to become owners and managers, to acquire land and build up assets.

The proportion of jobs in executive management held by black people increased almost five-fold between 1996 and 2016.

One of the overriding challenges this administration had to deal with when it took office was state capture and corruption.

Our first priority was to put a decisive stop to state capture, to dismantle the criminal networks within the state and to ensure that perpetrators faced justice.

We had to do that so that we could restore our institutions and rebuild our economy.

We appointed capable people with integrity to head our law-enforcement agencies, government departments, security services and state companies, often through an independent and transparent processes.

The credibility and efficiency of a number of institutions like the South African Revenue Service (SARS) have been restored and their performance improved.

We set up the Investigating Directorate as a specialised and multidisciplinary unit within the National Prosecuting Authority (NPA) to investigate corruption and other serious crimes.

Great progress has been made in bringing those responsible for state capture to justice. More than 200 accused persons are being prosecuted. More are under investigation.

Stolen funds are being recovered.

Freezing orders of R14 billion have been granted to the NPA's Asset Forfeiture Unit for state capture-related cases, and around R8.6 billion in corrupt proceeds have been returned to the state.

A restored and revitalised SARS has collected R4.8 billion in unpaid taxes as a result of evidence presented at the Commission, while the Special Investigating Unit has instituted civil litigation to the value of R64 billion.

We have taken steps, including through new legislation, to strengthen our ability to prevent money laundering and fraud and secure our removal from the "grey list" of the Financial Action Task Force.

With the assistance of business, we have set up a digital forensic capability to support the NPA Investigating Directorate, which in due course will be expanded to support law-enforcement more broadly.

Legislation is currently before Parliament to establish the Investigating Directorate as a permanent entity with full investigating powers.

But there is much more work to be done to eradicate corruption completely.

Based on the recommendations of the National Anti-Corruption Advisory Council, we are determined to introduce further measures to strengthen our anti-corruption agencies, protect whistle-blowers, regulate lobbying and prevent the undue influence of public representatives in procurement.

We will not stop until every person responsible for corruption is held to account. We will not stop until all stolen money has been recovered.

We will not stop until corruption is history.

The real tragedy of state capture was that it diverted attention and resources away from what government should have been doing, which is to grow our economy and create jobs.

Over the past five years, we have worked to revive our economy from a decade of stagnation and protect it from both domestic and global shocks.

We have made progress.

Our economy is today three times larger than it was 30 years ago.

The number of South Africans in employment increased from eight million in 1994 to over 16.7 million now.

Over the last two years, the number of jobs being created has been increasing every quarter, and we now have more people in employment than before the pandemic.

Yet, our unemployment rate is the highest it has ever been.

Even as employment is growing, more people are entering the job market each year than jobs are being created.

We have laid a foundation for growth through far-reaching economic reforms, an ambitious investment drive, and an infrastructure programme that is starting to yield results.

Companies continue to invest, thousands of hectares of farmland are being planted, new factories are being opened and production is being expanded.

We are on track to resolve the most important constraints on economic growth by stabilising our energy supply and fixing our logistics system.

As these obstacles are removed, the true potential of our economy is unleashed.

We set out a clear plan to end load-shedding, which we have been implementing with a single- minded focus through the National Energy Crisis Committee.

We have delivered on our commitments to bring substantial new power through private investment on to the grid, which is already helping to reduce load-shedding.

Last year, we implemented a major debt relief package, which will enable Eskom to make investments in maintenance and transmission infrastructure and ensure its sustainability going forward.

Since we revived our renewable energy programme five years ago, we have connected more than 2 500 megawatts of solar and wind power to the grid with three times this amount already in procurement or construction.

Through tax incentives and financial support, we have more than doubled the amount of rooftop solar capacity installed across the country in just the past year.

We have implemented sweeping regulatory reforms to enable private investment in electricity generation, with more than 120 new private energy projects now in development.

These are phenomenal developments that are driving the restructuring of our electricity sector in line with what many other economies have done to increase competitiveness and bring down prices.

Through all of these actions, we are confident that the worst is behind us and the end of load-shedding is finally within reach.

But we are not stopping there.

To ensure that we never face a similar crisis ever again, we are reforming our energy system to make it more competitive, sustainable and reliable into the future.

We are going to build more than 14 000 km of new transmission lines to accommodate renewable energy over the coming years.

To fast-track this process, we will enable private investment in transmission infrastructure through a variety of innovative investment models.

Last year, we tabled the Electricity Regulation Amendment Bill to support the restructuring of Eskom and establish a competitive electricity market.

As we undertake these reforms, we are positioning our economy for future growth in a world shaped by climate change and a revolution in green technologies.

In the last three years, our country has seen an increase in extreme weather events, often with disastrous consequences.

This is why we are implementing a just energy transition, not only to reduce carbon emissions and fight climate change, but to create growth and jobs for our own people.

We will undertake this transition at a pace, scale and cost that our country can afford and in a manner that ensures energy security.

With our abundance of solar, wind and mineral resources, we are going to create thousands of jobs in renewable energy, green hydrogen, green steel, electric vehicles and other green products.

The Northern Cape, with its optimal solar conditions, has already attracted billions of rands in investment.

We are going to set up a Special Economic Zone in the Boegoebaai port to drive investment in green energy. There is a great deal of interest from the private sector to participate in the boom that will be generated green hydrogen energy projects.

We have decided to support electric vehicle manufacturing in South Africa to grow our automotive sector, which provides good jobs to thousands of workers.

We have decided to give special focus to regions like Mpumalanga to enable the creation of new industries, new economic opportunities and sustainable jobs.

And in the past year, we have increased the financing pledges for our Just Energy Transition Investment Plan from around R170 billion to almost R240 billion.

To address the persistent effects of global warming, which manifest themselves through persistent floods, fires and droughts, we have decided to establish a Climate Change Response Fund.

This will bring together all spheres of government and the private sector in a collaborative effort to build our resilience and respond to the impacts of climate change.

To deal with severe inefficiencies in our freight logistics system, we are taking action to improve our ports and rail network and restore them to world-class standards.

We have set out a clear roadmap to stabilise the performance of Transnet and reform our logistics system.

Working closely with business and labour, we have established dedicated teams to turn around five strategic corridors that transport goods for export purposes.

The number of ships waiting to berth at the Port of Durban – which has experienced severe congestion in recent months – has reduced from more than 60 ships in mid-November to just 12 ships at the end of January.

Transnet has appointed an international terminal operator to help expand and improve its largest terminal at the Port of Durban.

And we are overhauling the freight rail system by allowing private rail operators to access the rail network.

With the current conflict in the Middle East affecting shipping traffic through the Suez Canal, South Africa is well positioned to offer bunkering services for ships that will be rerouted via our shores.

We completed the auction of broadband spectrum after more than a decade of delays, resulting in new investment, lower data costs and improved network reach and quality.

These reforms have a profound impact in a society in which access to the internet has risen dramatically over the last decade.

Less than half of all households had internet access in 2011, compared to 79 % of households in 2022.

Just this week, we published new regulations to reform our visa system, which will make it easier to attract the skills that our economy needs and create a dynamic ecosystem for innovation and entrepreneurship.

We raised R1.5 trillion in new investment commitments through five South Africa Investment Conferences, of which over R500 billion has already flowed into the economy.

To support growth in the mining sector, we are moving ahead with the modernisation of our mining rights licensing system and are launching an exploration fund to support emerging miners and exploit new mineral deposits.

Through this, mining, which was the bedrock on which the South African economy was built, will once again become a sunrise industry.

Participation of previously disadvantaged black people is increasing.

Black ownership stands at approximately 39% when compared with 2% in 2004. Investment in infrastructure is gaining momentum.

New and innovative funding mechanisms will be used to increase construction of infrastructure. The Department of Water and Sanitation aims to enhance water resource management by initiating infrastructure projects to secure water supply and diversifying water sources to reduce dependence on surface water.

Bulk water projects are under construction across the country to improve water supply to millions of residents in villages, towns and cities.

The following water infrastructure projects are in progress or completed:

Lesotho Highlands Water Project, Umzimvubu, Hazelmere Dam, uMkhomazi Water Project, Clanwilliam Dam, Tzaneen Dam, Loskop, Mandlakazi, pipeline from Jozini Dam, Giyani, pipeline from Nandoni Dam to Nsami Dam, Pilanesberg Water, Vaal Gamagara and pipeline from the Vaal River to Hothazel.

In the Eastern Cape, the Msikaba and Mtentu bridges are beginning to rise over the landscape, and will be among the highest in Africa once complete.

The steel used for part of the project is fabricated in Mpumalanga, and the iron ore comes from the Northern Cape.

In the past five years, South African National Roads Agency Limited, which manages nearly 25 000 km of roads, has awarded more than 1,200 projects to the value of R120 billion.

In November last year, Cabinet approved a framework for high-speed rail, focusing initially on the Johannesburg to Durban corridor.

As we grow the economy, we are making it more inclusive.

Through redistribution, around 25% of farmland in our country is now owned black South Africans, bringing us closer to achieving our target of 30% by 2030.

In the last 5 years, we have supported around 1,000 black industrialists with funding and other forms of support. These black-owned firms employ more than 90,000 workers and contribute many billions of rands to our economy.

At the same time, about 200,000 more workers obtained ownership of shares in the companies they work, bringing the total worker ownership in companies in the South African economy to well over half a million workers.

We see this trend continuing to grow as more and more companies realise that it is beneficial to their operation that their workers should have a stake in the businesses they work for.

The reforms that we have initiated and the work that is underway will enable us to end load-shedding, to improve our logistics system, to achieve water security and ultimately to create jobs.

While our challenges have never been greater, our response to these challenges will lead us to greater prosperity than we have ever known.

One of the worst injustices of apartheid was the manner in which education was used as a tool to perpetuate inequality.

Over the last 30 years, we have sought to use education as a tool to create equality. Our basic education outcomes are steadily improving across a range of measures. The latest matric pass rate, at 82.9%, is the highest ever.

And with each new year, learners from no-fee schools are accounting for more and more of the bachelor passes achieved.

At the same time, fewer learners are dropping out of school.

We have increased funding for poor and working-class students in universities and TVET significantly over the past five years.

Over the next five years, we will focus our attention on expanding access to early childhood development and improving early grade reading, where we are already beginning to see progress.

Moving early childhood development to the Department of Basic Education (DBE) was one of the most important decisions as we were now able to devote more resources to early childhood development and ensure that through cooperative governance various departments of government get involved in early childhood development augmented by the DBE.

Our policies and programmes have, over the course of 30 years, lifted millions of people out of dire poverty.

Today, fewer South Africans go hungry and fewer live in poverty.

In 1993, South Africa faced a significant poverty challenge, with 71.1% of its population living in poverty.

However, under the democratic government, there has been a consistent decline in these numbers.

By 2010, the poverty rate had dropped to 60.9%, and it continued to decrease, reaching

55.5 percent in 2020, as reported by the World Bank.

This progress has been made possible by extensive support to those in society who need it most.

Five years ago, we introduced a further measure to tackle poverty in by introducing National Minimum Wage is envisaged in the Freedom Charter.

The decision by key role players, being business and labour and communities, to introduce the minimum wage immediately raised the wages of over 6 million workers.

In the midst of the pandemic, we introduced the special Social Relief of Distress Grant, which currently reaches some 9 million unemployed people every month. We have seen the benefits of this grant and will extend it and improve it as the next step towards income support for the unemployed.

These grants and subsidies do much more than give people what they need to live. They are an investment in the future.

Social assistance has been shown to increase school enrolment and attendance, lower drop-out rates, and improve the pass rate.

South Africans are living longer than ever before.

Life expectancy has increased from 54 years in 2003 to 65 years in 2023. Maternal and infant deaths have declined dramatically.

We have built more hospitals and clinics, especially in poor areas, providing better quality care to more South Africans.

Today, 95% of persons diagnosed with HIV know their status, 79% of those receive antiretroviral treatment, and 93% of those are virally suppressed.

New HIV infections among young people have declined significantly.

And yet, while our health system has had a great impact on people's lives, we are working to improve both the quality of healthcare and equality of access.

The National Health Insurance (NHI) will provide free health care at the point of care for all South Africans, whether in public or private health facilities.

We plan to incrementally implement the NHI, dealing with issues like health system financing, the health workforce, medical products, vaccines and technologies, and health information systems.

One of the most visible, impactful and meaningful achievements in the first three decades of freedom has been in providing homes to the people.

Today, nearly nine out of every 10 households live in a formal dwelling.

Where there were once shacks and mud houses, there are now homes of brick and mortar.

These are homes with water to drink and to wash with, homes with electricity for lighting and cooking.

At the end of apartheid, only six out of 10 people had access to clean drinking water. Today, that figure has increased to nearly nine out of 10 South Africans.

We are working to ensure that subsidised housing is located close to work, education and services.

But for services to be delivered, local government has to work.

Too many municipalities are failing on governance, financial and service delivery measures. These constraints affect every aspect of peoples' daily lives.

We have started the implementation of a number of measures to address this problem by providing support to local government, including professionalising the civil service and ensuring that people with the right skills are appointed to key positions.

The Presidency, National Treasury and the Department of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs are working together to enhance technical capacity in local government and to improve planning, coordination and fiscal oversight.

Through the Presidential *izimbizo* that have been held across the country, we have seen how the District Development Model (DDM) has brought together all spheres of government and key stakeholders to address the service delivery challenges in communities.

The DDM has proven to be an effective instrument to enhance cooperative governance and collaboration. We will continue to broaden and deepen this process.

Tackling crime and insecurity is a key priority.

South Africans deserve to be safe and to feel safe, to walk freely and without fear in their neighbourhoods and public spaces.

During this administration, we have focused on equipping our law-enforcement agencies, which had been systematically weakened, to do their work effectively.

We have strengthened the ranks of the police through the recruitment of 20,000 police officers over the last two years and another 10,000 in the year to come.

An extra 5,000 police officers have been deployed to Public Order Policing.

The South African Police Service has launched Operation Shanela as a new approach to target crime hotspots, which resulted in over 285,000 arrests since May last year.

The Economic Infrastructure Task Teams that are operational in all provinces have had important successes in combatting cable theft, damage to critical infrastructure and illegal mining.

Through close collaboration with the private sector, we have seen a reduction in security incidents on the rail network.

We launched the new Border Management Authority last year to improve the security of our borders, and have already stopped over 100,000 people who tried to enter our country illegally.

Together with civil society, we developed the National Strategic Plan on GBVF, together with civil society, as a society wide response to this pandemic.

Around R21 billion was dedicated over the medium term to the implementation of the six pillars of the plan, including the economic empowerment of women.

New laws were introduced to strengthen the response of the criminal justice system GBV and provide better support to survivors of such violence.

Our ultimate goal is to end GBV altogether by mobilising all of society. As part of this, we support the call for a pledge that men in South Africa are invited to take to demonstrate their personal commitment to ending this scourge.

Women are also in the process of developing their own pledge.

We still have a long way to go to build safer communities, prevent violent crime, and protect our infrastructure.

But there is no doubt that a professional, well-trained and properly resourced police force, working closely with communities, will make our country a safer place.

Today, every South African can hold their heads high, confident that we have assumed our rightful place on the world stage.

We remain committed to playing a constructive role on our continent and around the globe for the realisation of a better Africa and a better world.

We will continue to play an important role to silence the guns throughout our continent.

Our engagements with parties in the Russia-Ukraine conflict through the Africa Peace Initiative are progressing. We engage in these peace efforts because we believe that even the most intractable conflicts can be brought to an end through negotiations.

Guided by the fundamental principle of human rights and freedom, we have taken up the Palestinian cause to prevent further deaths and destruction in Gaza.

We have welcomed the ruling of the International Court of Justice that Israel must take all measures within its power to prevent acts of genocide against Palestinians.

We condemn the killing of civilians on all sides and call on all parties involved in the conflict to commit to a peace process that will deliver a two state solution.

We will use our foreign policy to pursue our development goals. During our leadership of Brazil, Russia, India, China and South Africa (BRICS) last year, we witnessed a new chapter for the BRICS family of countries.

The expansion of the group from five to ten members presents opportunities for trade and a strengthening of political and diplomatic ties between countries in the global South.

We will build on the progress we have made in establishing the African Continental Free Trade Area (AfCFTA), which will transform South Africa's economy and that of the continent by creating new jobs and increasing economic participation.

And we will place Africa's development at the top of the agenda when we host the G20 in 2025.

The achievements over the last three decades are a testament to the power of collaboration and partnership to address our most pressing challenges.

Our country has a vibrant civil society, a powerful union movement and an engaged private sector.

Over the last five years, we have worked with these social partners to address challenges such as to keep people safe and to distribute vaccines during the COVID-19 pandemic, and to mobilise a society-wide response to GBV.

In the past year, we have come together with social partners to end load-shedding, address the challenges in the logistics sector, tackle crime and corruption, and accelerate job creation.

This is the South African way of building a social compact working together on tangible issues, and it will be the key to building a new society in the years to come.

Fellow South Africans,

This is the last SoNA of the sixth democratic administration. The last five years has been a time of recovery, rebuilding and renewal.

We have had to revitalise our economy after more than a decade of poor economic performance. We have had to rebuild our public institutions after the era of state capture.

We have had to recover from a devastating global pandemic that caused great misery and hardship, that closed businesses and cost jobs.

And we have had to confront and overcome a debilitating electricity crisis that, despite significant improvement in recent months, continues to hold back our economy.

We have come a long way in the last five years. We have built on the achievements of the last three decades and we have taken decisive measures to address the immediate challenges facing South Africans.

We have restored the independence and capability of our law-enforcement agencies to tackle corruption and crime.

We have worked to advance the rights of persons with disability. We took great pride in making South African Sign Language the 12th official language of our country.

We have safeguarded and promoted the basic rights in our Constitution, such as the freedom of speech, association and belief. We have defended media freedom and the independence of the judiciary.

We have protected and advanced the rights of members of the lesbian, gay, bisexual, transgender, queer/questioning and intersex community, and continue to combat all forms of prejudice and intolerance.

We have made significant progress on measures to grow the economy, create jobs and reduce poverty.

While we have set in motion the process of renewal and reform, there is more work to be done to see these reforms through to the end.

We will see through the work underway with our partners to end load-shedding and revive the performance of our ports and rail network.

We will continue to strengthen our law-enforcement institutions, tackle GBV and fight corruption to make South Africa a safe place for all.

We will continue to strengthen local government, professionalise the Public Service and ensure that public officials are held accountable for their actions.

We will continue to position our economy to grow and compete in a fast-changing world, to support small businesses, to give young people economic opportunities and to provide social protection to the vulnerable.

We will continue the work to improve the country's fiscal position and hold firm to a sound macroeconomic trajectory.

We will use the opportunities provided by the AfCFTA to increase our trade and expand our industries.

We will continue to build an inclusive economy, focusing on the empowerment of black and women South Africans, advancing workers' rights, intensifying land reform and pursuing a just energy transition that leaves no-one behind.

Fellow South Africans,

As we celebrate 30 years of freedom, we must remain steadfast in our commitment to our constitutional democracy and its promise of a better life.

We should not give in to those who resist the responsibility that the Constitution places on us all to correct the injustices of the past and fundamentally transform our economy and society.

We must remind these people of the obligation that the Constitution places on the State to progressively realise the rights of everyone to housing, health care, food, water, social security, safety and education.

By the same measure, we should not allow anyone to diminish vital democratic institutions, to denigrate the judiciary or to challenge the constitutional authority of this Parliament.

We should not give in to those who seek to divide our nation, incite violence and undermine our democracy.

As in the past, as in the future, the people of South Africa should stand together against any attempt to reverse the achievements of our democracy.

As the Chairperson of the Constitutional Assembly, I worked with many great leaders of our country to craft a Constitution that truly reflects the will of the South African people.

As President, I see it as my primary duty to defend our Constitution, and to work every day to realise its promise.

As we move forward, let us remember that it is up to us – not anyone else – to determine the future of South Africa.

We are not passive observers of our history. We are its authors.

We are the builders of this country we call home.

As we look towards the next 30 years of freedom, we must choose the kind of country, and indeed the kind of world, we want to create for ourselves and for our children.

We are committed to a South Africa in which our common identity lies in our recognition of each other's humanity. We want a country in which every person is free to be exactly who they are, regardless of their race, gender, sexual orientation, ethnicity or religion.

We want a country in which the same opportunities are available to every child, whether they are born in Sandton, in Mdantsane, in Sekhukhune, in Mitchell's Plain or in Phoenix.

We want a country in which the rule of law applies to everyone, no matter how wealthy they are or what position they hold.

As we continue the journey together to make this vision a reality, we are inspired by democracy's children, by their energy, by their creativity and by their enthusiasm.

We are inspired by the young people who have carried our hopes onto the global stage, from the Springboks to Banyana Banyana, from the heroic Bafana Bafana to Grammy Award winners like Tyla.

As we mark the 30th anniversary of our freedom, we are reminded of the words of President Nelson Mandela, who said that after climbing a great hill, one only finds that there are many more hills to climb.

He said:

"I have taken a moment here to rest, to steal a view of the glorious vista that surrounds me, to look back on the distance I have come.

"But I can rest only for a moment, for with freedom comes responsibilities, and I dare not linger, for my long walk is not yet ended."

While we have come far, we have a long way still to go.

Like Madiba, we must keep moving, always forward, always onwards, towards the country of our dreams. Always believing that victory is certain.

I thank you.

ATTACHMENTS

Approved Organizational Structure 2023 / 2024

Audit Action Plan

"THE SECRET OF LIFE, THOUGH, IS TO FALL SEVEN TIMES AND TO GET UP EIGHT TIMES"

LGSETA
CREATING GREATER IMPACT

Kamiesberg Local - L230701809
22 Mainroad
Garies
Garies
8220
Northern Cape

Workplace Skills Plan And Annual Training Report	
Reference number	L230701809-25
ATR/WSP Period	2024/2025
Workplace Skills Plan Report Period	1 May 2024 - 30 April 2025
Annual Training Report Period	1 May 2023 - 30 April 2024
Closing Date	30 April 2024
Submitted	Yes
Date Submitted	30 April 2024 08:05

Administrative Details as at 2024

Organisation Details	
Name of Municipality/Entity	Kamiesberg Local
Skills Development Levy (SDL) No	L230701809
Demarcation Code	NC064
Municipal Type	Local Municipality
Sic Code	91202
Contact Person	Gertrude Miggel
Telephone	0276528000
Fax	0276528001
Physical Address	22 Mainroad Garies Garies 8220
Postal Address	Private Bag x200 Garies Garies 8220
Province	Northern Cape

B1. Employee Summary as at 2024

Total Number of Councillors/Employees Per Occupational Category, Population Group, Disability Status, And Age Group																					
Occupation Category	Ofo Code	Occupation	FA	FC	FI	FW	MA	MC	MI	MW	Total	DA	DC	DI	DW	Total	< 35	35 - 55	55 >	Total	Non SA
LEGISLATORS	2021-111101-2	Speaker (Local or Provincial Government)	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	0
LEGISLATORS	2021-111101-8	Councillor	0	3	0	1	0	3	0	1	8	0	1	0	0	1	0	4	4	8	0
LEGISLATORS	2021-111101-9	Mayor	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	0
LEGISLATORS	2021-111102-3	Chief Whip	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	0
LEGISLATORS Totals			0	4	0	1	0	5	0	1	11	0	1	0	0	1	0	7	4	11	0
MANAGERS	2021-111203-5	Municipal Manager	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	0
MANAGERS	2021-121101-8	Chief Financial Officer (CFO)	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	0
MANAGERS	2021-121910-1	Water infrastructure manager	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	0
MANAGERS Totals			0	0	0	0	0	3	0	0	3	0	0	0	0	0	0	3	0	3	0
PROFESSIONALS	2021-226302-11	Health and Safety Officer / Coordinator / Professional	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0
PROFESSIONALS	2021-241104-4	Auditor	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0
PROFESSIONALS	2021-241106	Accountant in Practice	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	0	0	1	0	1	0	1	0
PROFESSIONALS	2021-241107	Financial Accountant	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	0
PROFESSIONALS	2021-242202-13	Special Projects Analyst	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0
PROFESSIONALS	2021-242303-10	Hr Officer	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	0
PROFESSIONALS	2021-242402-4	Maintenance Instructor	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	0
PROFESSIONALS	2021-262201	Librarian	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	0	0	1	0	1	0	1	0
PROFESSIONALS	2021-262201-15	Library Manager / Advisor	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	0
PROFESSIONALS	2021-265405	Technical Director	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	0
PROFESSIONALS Totals			0	5	0	0	0	5	0	0	10	0	2	0	0	2	2	7	1	10	0
TECHNICIANS AND ASSOCIATE PROFESSIONALS	2021-331201-11	Finance Clerk / Officer	0	11	0	0	0	4	0	0	15	0	0	0	0	0	4	11	0	15	0

TECHNICIANS AND ASSOCIATE PROFESSIONALS	2021-333402-10	Agricultural Consultant	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	0
TECHNICIANS AND ASSOCIATE PROFESSIONALS	2021-334302	Personal Assistant	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0
TECHNICIANS AND ASSOCIATE PROFESSIONALS	2021-335401-1	Driver Licensing Clerk Cashier	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	0
TECHNICIANS AND ASSOCIATE PROFESSIONALS Totals			0	12	0	0	0	6	0	0	18	0	0	0	0	0	5	13	0	18	0
CLERICAL SUPPORT WORKERS	2021-413201-8	Data Capturer	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0
CLERICAL SUPPORT WORKERS	2021-431101-5	Assets Clerk / Coordinator	0	1	0	0	0	1	0	0	2	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	2	0
CLERICAL SUPPORT WORKERS	2021-431101-8	Debtors Clerk	0	0	0	0	0	4	0	0	4	0	1	0	0	1	2	2	0	4	0
CLERICAL SUPPORT WORKERS	2021-432101-15	Supply Clerk / Assistant / Officer / Scheduler	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0
CLERICAL SUPPORT WORKERS	2021-441101	Library Assistant	0	3	0	0	0	0	0	0	3	0	0	0	0	0	0	3	0	3	0
CLERICAL SUPPORT WORKERS	2021-441501-8	Records Clerk / Coordinator	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0
CLERICAL SUPPORT WORKERS	2021-441601	Human Resources Clerk	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	0
CLERICAL SUPPORT WORKERS	2021-441903-1	Administration Officer	0	1	0	0	0	2	0	0	3	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	3	3	0
CLERICAL SUPPORT WORKERS	2021-441903-7	Administrator	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	0
CLERICAL SUPPORT WORKERS Totals			0	8	0	0	0	9	0	0	17	0	1	0	0	1	5	8	4	17	0
SERVICE AND SALES WORKERS	2021-515301	Caretaker	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	0
SERVICE AND SALES WORKERS	2021-523102-2	Cashier	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	0
SERVICE AND SALES WORKERS	2021-541907	Disaster Management Officer	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	0

SERVICE AND SALES WORKERS	2021-542203-6	Team Leader (Tm Ldr)	0	0	0	0	0	2	0	0	2	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	2	0
SERVICE AND SALES WORKERS Totals			0	1	0	0	0	4	0	0	5	0	0	0	0	0	0	4	1	5	0
SKILLED AGRICULTURAL, FORESTRY, FISHERY, CRAFT AND RELATED TRADES WORKERS	2021-671101	Electrician	0	0	0	0	0	2	0	0	2	0	0	0	0	0	0	2	0	2	0
SKILLED AGRICULTURAL, FORESTRY, FISHERY, CRAFT AND RELATED TRADES WORKERS Totals			0	0	0	0	0	2	0	0	2	0	0	0	0	0	0	2	0	2	0
PLANT AND MACHINE OPERATORS AND ASSEMBLERS	2021-711201-37	Plant Operator	0	2	0	0	0	8	0	0	10	0	0	0	0	0	3	5	2	10	0
PLANT AND MACHINE OPERATORS AND ASSEMBLERS	2021-732101-7	Driver-messenger	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	0
PLANT AND MACHINE OPERATORS AND ASSEMBLERS	2021-734205	Grader Operator	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0
PLANT AND MACHINE OPERATORS AND ASSEMBLERS	2021-734214-3	Dump Truck Driver/ Operator	0	0	0	0	0	6	0	0	6	0	0	0	0	0	1	3	2	6	0
PLANT AND MACHINE OPERATORS AND ASSEMBLERS Totals			0	2	0	0	0	16	0	0	18	0	0	0	0	0	4	9	5	18	0
ELEMENTARY OCCUPATIONS	2021-811201-7	Cleaner (Non-domestic)	0	2	0	0	0	11	0	0	13	0	0	0	0	0	0	9	4	13	0
ELEMENTARY OCCUPATIONS	2021-811204	Caretaker / cleaner	0	0	0	0	0	2	0	0	2	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	2	0
ELEMENTARY OCCUPATIONS	2021-821102-1	Waterman	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	0
ELEMENTARY OCCUPATIONS	2021-831103-3	Plant Attendant	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	0

ELEMENTARY OCCUPATIONS	2021-862202-5	General Worker	0	0	0	0	0	2	0	0	2	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	2	0
ELEMENTARY OCCUPATIONS Sub Totals			0	2	0	0	0	17	0	0	19	0	0	0	0	0	1	12	6	19	0
Totals			0	34	0	1	0	67	0	1	103	0	4	0	0	4	17	65	21	103	0

B2. Interns Funded By Others Summary as at 2024

Number of Interns Funded by other given structured work experience as at 2024 by Occupational Category, Population Group, Disability status, and Age Group																				
Occupation Category	Ofo Code	Occupation	FA	FC	FI	FW	MA	MC	MI	MW	Total	DA	DC	DI	DW	Total	< 35	35 - 55	55 >	Total	Non SA
CLERICAL SUPPORT WORKERS	2021-431101-8	Debtors Clerk	0	0	0	0	0	2	0	0	2	0	0	0	0	0	2	0	0	2	0
CLERICAL SUPPORT WORKERS Totals			0	0	0	0	0	2	0	0	2	0	0	0	0	0	2	0	0	2	0
Totals			0	0	0	0	0	2	0	0	2	0	0	0	0	0	2	0	0	2	0

B3. LGSETA Funded Interns Summary as at 2024

Number of Interns given structured work experience as at 2024 by Occupational Category, Population Group, Disability status, and Age Group																				
Occupation Category	Ofo Code	Occupation	FA	FC	FI	FW	MA	MC	MI	MW	Total	DA	DC	DI	DW	Total	< 35	35 - 55	55 >	Total	Non SA

B4. WIL Funded Interns Summary as at 2024

Number of Interns given structured work experience as at 2024 by Occupational Category, Population Group, Disability status, and Age Group																				
Occupation Category	Ofo Code	Occupation	FA	FC	FI	FW	MA	MC	MI	MW	Total	DA	DC	DI	DW	Total	< 35	35 - 55	55 >	Total	Non SA

C1. Qualification Profile as at 2024

Qualification Profile														
Occupation Category	Ofo Code	Occupation	Below NQF Level	NQF Level 1	NQF Level 2	NQF Level 3	NQF Level 4	NQF Level 5	NQF Level 6	NQF Level 7	NQF Level 8	NQF Level 9	NQF Level 10	Other	Total
LEGISLATORS	2021-111101-2	Speaker (Local or Provincial Government)	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
LEGISLATORS	2021-111101-8	Councillor	0	1	2	3	2	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	8
LEGISLATORS	2021-111101-9	Mayor	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
LEGISLATORS	2021-111102-3	Chief Whip	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
LEGISLATORS Totals			0	1	2	3	4	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	11
MANAGERS	2021-111203-5	Municipal Manager	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	1
MANAGERS	2021-121101-8	Chief Financial Officer (CFO)	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	1
MANAGERS	2021-121910-1	Water infrastructure manager	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
MANAGERS Totals			0	0	0	0	1	0	0	2	0	0	0	0	3
PROFESSIONALS	2021-226302-11	Health and Safety Officer / Coordinator / Professional	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
PROFESSIONALS	2021-241104-4	Auditor	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	1
PROFESSIONALS	2021-241106	Accountant in Practice	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
PROFESSIONALS	2021-241107	Financial Accountant	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	1
PROFESSIONALS	2021-242202-13	Special Projects Analyst	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
PROFESSIONALS	2021-242303-10	Hr Officer	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
PROFESSIONALS	2021-242402-4	Maintenance Instructor	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
PROFESSIONALS	2021-262201	Librarian	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
PROFESSIONALS	2021-262201-15	Library Manager / Advisor	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
PROFESSIONALS	2021-265405	Technical Director	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	1
PROFESSIONALS Totals			0	0	1	1	2	3	2	1	0	0	0	0	10
TECHNICIANS AND ASSOCIATE PROFESSIONALS	2021-331201-11	Finance Clerk / Officer	0	0	4	1	9	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	15
TECHNICIANS AND ASSOCIATE PROFESSIONALS	2021-333402-10	Agricultural Consultant	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
TECHNICIANS AND ASSOCIATE PROFESSIONALS	2021-334302	Personal Assistant	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
TECHNICIANS AND ASSOCIATE PROFESSIONALS	2021-335401-1	Driver Licensing Clerk Cashier	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
TECHNICIANS AND ASSOCIATE PROFESSIONALS Totals			0	0	4	1	12	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	18
CLERICAL SUPPORT WORKERS	2021-413201-8	Data Capturer	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1

CLERICAL SUPPORT WORKERS	2021-431101-5	Assets Clerk / Coordinator	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	2	0	0	0	0	2
CLERICAL SUPPORT WORKERS	2021-431101-8	Debtors Clerk	0	0	0	0	2	2	0	0	0	0	0	0	4
CLERICAL SUPPORT WORKERS	2021-432101-15	Supply Clerk / Assistant / Officer / Scheduler	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
CLERICAL SUPPORT WORKERS	2021-441101	Library Assistant	1	0	0	0	2	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	3
CLERICAL SUPPORT WORKERS	2021-441501-8	Records Clerk / Coordinator	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
CLERICAL SUPPORT WORKERS	2021-441601	Human Resources Clerk	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
CLERICAL SUPPORT WORKERS	2021-441903-1	Administration Officer	0	0	0	1	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	3
CLERICAL SUPPORT WORKERS	2021-441903-7	Administrator	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
CLERICAL SUPPORT WORKERS Totals			1	0	0	2	6	5	1	2	0	0	0	0	17
SERVICE AND SALES WORKERS	2021-515301	Caretaker	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
SERVICE AND SALES WORKERS	2021-523102-2	Cashier	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
SERVICE AND SALES WORKERS	2021-541907	Disaster Management Officer	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
SERVICE AND SALES WORKERS	2021-542203-6	Team Leader (Tm Ldr)	0	0	2	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	2
SERVICE AND SALES WORKERS Totals			0	1	2	0	2	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	5
SKILLED AGRICULTURAL, FORESTRY, FISHERY, CRAFT AND RELATED TRADES WORKERS	2021-671101	Electrician	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	2
SKILLED AGRICULTURAL, FORESTRY, FISHERY, CRAFT AND RELATED TRADES WORKERS Totals			0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	2
PLANT AND MACHINE OPERATORS AND ASSEMBLERS	2021-711201-37	Plant Operator	3	2	5	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	10
PLANT AND MACHINE OPERATORS AND ASSEMBLERS	2021-732101-7	Driver-messenger	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1

PLANT AND MACHINE OPERATORS AND ASSEMBLERS	2021-734205	Grader Operator	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
PLANT AND MACHINE OPERATORS AND ASSEMBLERS	2021-734214-3	Dump Truck Driver/ Operator	1	1	0	1	3	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	6
PLANT AND MACHINE OPERATORS AND ASSEMBLERS Totals			5	3	5	1	4	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	18
ELEMENTARY OCCUPATIONS	2021-811201-7	Cleaner (Non-domestic)	4	0	6	2	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	13
ELEMENTARY OCCUPATIONS	2021-811204	Caretaker / cleaner	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	2
ELEMENTARY OCCUPATIONS	2021-821102-1	Waterman	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
ELEMENTARY OCCUPATIONS	2021-831103-3	Plant Attendant	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
ELEMENTARY OCCUPATIONS	2021-862202-5	General Worker	0	2	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	2
ELEMENTARY OCCUPATIONS Totals			6	3	6	2	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	19
Totals			12	8	20	10	32	12	3	6	0	0	0	0	103

D1. Employee Movement Between 1 May 2023 - 30 April 2024

Number of new Employee Recruits By Occupation Category, Gender, Population Group, Disability and Age																									
Occupation Category	Ofo Code	Occupation	FA	FC	FI	FW	MA	MC	MI	MW	Total	DA	DC	DI	DW	Total	< 35	35 - 55	55 >	Total	Non SA	Never Worked	Graduates	< 35	35 - 55	55 >
TECHNICIANS AND ASSOCIATE PROFESSIONALS	2021-334302	Personal Assistant	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	1	0	0	0	0
TECHNICIANS AND ASSOCIATE PROFESSIONALS Totals			0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	1	0	0	0	0
CLERICAL SUPPORT WORKERS	2021-431101-8	Debtors Clerk	0	0	0	0	0	2	0	0	2	0	0	0	0	0	2	0	0	2	0	2	0	0	0	0
CLERICAL SUPPORT WORKERS Totals			0	0	0	0	0	2	0	0	2	0	0	0	0	0	2	0	0	2	0	2	0	0	0	0
Totals			0	0	0	0	0	3	0	0	3	0	0	0	0	0	3	0	0	3	0	3	0	0	0	0

D2. Employee Turnover Between1 May 2023 - 30 April 2024

Employee Turnover																												
Occupation Category	Ofo Code	Occupation	FA	FC	FI	FW	MA	MC	MI	MW	Total	DA	DC	DI	DW	Total	< 35	35 - 55	55 >	Total	Resigned	Retired	Retrenched	Medical Reasons	Dismissed	Death	End Of Contract	Total
MANAGERS	2021-132202-11	Technical Services Manager (Mining)	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
MANAGERS Totals			0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
PROFESSIONALS	2021-262201	Librarian	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	1
PROFESSIONALS Totals			0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	1
CLERICAL SUPPORT WORKERS	2021-431101-8	Debtors Clerk	0	1	0	0	0	1	0	0	2	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	2	0	0	0	0	0	0	2	2
CLERICAL SUPPORT WORKERS Totals			0	1	0	0	0	1	0	0	2	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	2	0	0	0	0	0	0	2	2
PLANT AND MACHINE OPERATORS AND ASSEMBLERS	2021-711201-37	Plant Operator	0	0	0	0	0	2	0	0	2	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	2	2	0	2	0	0	0	0	0	2
PLANT AND MACHINE OPERATORS AND ASSEMBLERS Totals			0	0	0	0	0	2	0	0	2	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	2	2	0	2	0	0	0	0	0	2
Totals			0	2	0	0	0	4	0	0	6	0	0	0	0	0	1	2	3	6	1	3	0	0	0	0	2	6

E1. Planned Training Budget for 1 May 2024 - 30 April 2025

Planned Training Budget						
Funding Source	Planned Training Budget - Employed	Planned Training Budget - Unemployed	Actual Expenditure - Employed	Actual Expenditure - Unemployed	Committed Expenditure - Employed	Committed Expenditure - Unemployed
Mandatory Grant Funds	50000					
Outstanding Mandatory Grant funds from previous year						
Discretionary Grants funds						
Additional funding (Municipality/entity, donor funds, other government funds etc)	150000					
Totals	200000	0	0	0	0	0

E2. Total Planned Training Beneficiaries for 1 May 2024 - 30 April 2025

Total Planned Training Beneficiaries								
LGSETA Strategic Focus Area	Municipal Key Performance Area	Main IDP Priority Linked to Key Performance Area	Female - Employed	Male - Employed	Total	Female - Unemployed	Male - Unemployed	Total
Enhancing Good Governance, Leadership and Management Capabilities	Good Governance and the linking of democracy	Good Service delivery	0	0	0	3	20	23
Promoting Sound Financial Management & Financial Viability	Municipal Financial Viability and Management	To ensure good financial records	0	0	0	10	10	20
Enhancing Infrastructure and Service Delivery	Basic Service Delivery and Infrastructure Development		0	0	0			0
Enhancing Municipal Planning	Municipal Transformation and Institutional Development		0	0	0			0
Promoting Spatial Transformation and Inclusion	Sustainable Local Economic Development		0	0	0			0
Totals			0	0	0	13	30	43

E3. Total Actual Adult Education and Training beneficiaries to be trained from 30 April 2024

Total Actual Adult Education and Training beneficiaries to be trained										
AET Level	Female LGSETA funded - Employed	Female Other funded - Employed	Male LGSETA funded - Employed	Male Other funded - Employed	Total	Female LGSETA funded - Unemployed	Female Other funded - Unemployed	Male LGSETA funded - Unemployed	Male Other funded - Unemployed	Total
AET Level 1					0					0
AET Level 2					0					0
AET Level 3					0					0
AET Level 4	10	10	10	10	40	10	10	10	10	40
National Senior Certificate	10	10	10	10	40	10	10	10	10	40
Totals	20	20	20	20	80	20	20	20	20	80

E4. Total Planned Workplace Training systems beneficiaries from 30 April 2024

Total Planned Workplace Training systems beneficiaries					
Type	Female Beneficiaries	Male Beneficiaries	Total	Total number of training interventions	Total number of training interventions funded by LGSETA
Skills Development Facilitator	2	0	2	1	1
Local Labour Forum	5	6	11	1	1
Training Committee	4	4	8	1	1
Totals	11	10	21	3	3

E5. NUMBER OF PLANNED TRAINING BENEFICIARIES BY OCCUPATION CATEGORY, GENDER, POPULATION GROUP, DISABILITY AND AGE for 30 April 2024 - EMPLOYED

NUMBER OF PLANNED TRAINING BENEFICIARIES BY OCCUPATION CATEGORY, GENDER, POPULATION GROUP, DISABILITY AND AGE - EMPLOYED																				
Occupation Category	Ofo Code	Occupation	FA	FC	FI	FW	MA	MC	MI	MW	Total	DA	DC	DI	DW	Total	< 35	35 - 55	55 >	Total
LEGISLATORS	2021-111101-2	Speaker (Local or Provincial Government)	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1
LEGISLATORS	2021-111101-8	Councillor	0	3	0	1	0	3	0	1	8	0	1	0	0	1	0	4	4	8
LEGISLATORS	2021-111101-9	Mayor	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1
LEGISLATORS	2021-111102-3	Chief Whip	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1
LEGISLATORS Totals			0	4	0	1	0	5	0	0	11	0	1	0	0	1	0	7	4	11
PROFESSIONALS	2021-242202-13	Special Projects Analyst	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1
PROFESSIONALS	2021-242402-4	Maintenance Instructor	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1
PROFESSIONALS	2021-262201-15	Library Manager / Advisor	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1
PROFESSIONALS	2021-265405	Technical Director	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1
PROFESSIONALS Totals			0	0	0	0	0	4	0	0	4	0	0	0	0	0	1	3	0	4
TECHNICIANS AND ASSOCIATE PROFESSIONALS	2021-331201-11	Finance Clerk / Officer	0	10	0	0	0	4	0	0	14	0	0	0	0	0	4	10	0	14
TECHNICIANS AND ASSOCIATE PROFESSIONALS	2021-333402-10	Agricultural Consultant	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1
TECHNICIANS AND ASSOCIATE PROFESSIONALS	2021-334302	Personal Assistant	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1
TECHNICIANS AND ASSOCIATE PROFESSIONALS	2021-335401-1	Driver Licensing Clerk Cashier	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1
TECHNICIANS AND ASSOCIATE PROFESSIONALS Totals			0	11	0	0	0	6	0	0	17	0	0	0	0	0	5	12	0	17
CLERICAL SUPPORT WORKERS	2021-413201-8	Data Capturer	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1

CLERICAL SUPPORT WORKERS	2021-431101-5	Assets Clerk / Coordinator	0	1	0	0	0	1	0	0	2	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	2
CLERICAL SUPPORT WORKERS	2021-431101-8	Debtors Clerk	0	0	0	0	0	4	0	0	4	0	1	0	0	1	2	2	0	4
CLERICAL SUPPORT WORKERS	2021-432101-15	Supply Clerk / Assistant / Officer / Scheduler	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1
CLERICAL SUPPORT WORKERS	2021-441101	Library Assistant	0	3	0	0	0	0	0	0	3	0	0	0	0	0	0	3	0	3
CLERICAL SUPPORT WORKERS	2021-441501-8	Records Clerk / Coordinator	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1
CLERICAL SUPPORT WORKERS	2021-441601	Human Resources Clerk	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1
CLERICAL SUPPORT WORKERS	2021-441903-1	Administration Officer	0	1	0	0	0	2	0	0	3	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	3	3
CLERICAL SUPPORT WORKERS	2021-441903-7	Administrator	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1
CLERICAL SUPPORT WORKERS Totals			0	8	0	0	0	9	0	0	17	0	1	0	0	1	5	8	4	17
SERVICE AND SALES WORKERS	2021-515301	Caretaker	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1
SERVICE AND SALES WORKERS	2021-523102-2	Cashier	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1
SERVICE AND SALES WORKERS	2021-541907	Disaster Management Officer	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1
SERVICE AND SALES WORKERS	2021-542203-6	Team Leader (Tm Ldr)	0	0	0	0	0	2	0	0	2	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	2
SERVICE AND SALES WORKERS Totals			0	1	0	0	0	4	0	0	5	0	0	0	0	0	0	4	1	5
SKILLED AGRICULTURAL, FORESTRY, FISHERY, CRAFT AND RELATED TRADES WORKERS	2021-671101	Electrician	0	0	0	0	0	2	0	0	2	0	0	0	0	0	0	2	0	2
SKILLED AGRICULTURAL, FORESTRY, FISHERY, CRAFT AND RELATED TRADES WORKERS Totals			0	0	0	0	0	2	0	0	2	0	0	0	0	0	0	2	0	2
PLANT AND MACHINE OPERATORS AND ASSEMBLERS	2021-711201-37	Plant Operator	0	2	0	0	0	10	0	0	12	0	0	0	0	0	3	5	4	12

PLANT AND MACHINE OPERATORS AND ASSEMBLERS	2021-732101-7	Driver-messenger	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1
PLANT AND MACHINE OPERATORS AND ASSEMBLERS	2021-734205	Grader Operator	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1
PLANT AND MACHINE OPERATORS AND ASSEMBLERS	2021-734214-3	Dump Truck Driver/ Operator	0	0	0	0	0	6	0	0	6	0	0	0	0	0	1	3	2	6
PLANT AND MACHINE OPERATORS AND ASSEMBLERS Totals			0	2	0	0	0	18	0	0	20	0	0	0	0	0	4	9	7	20
ELEMENTARY OCCUPATIONS	2021-811201-7	Cleaner (Non-domestic)	0	2	0	0	0	11	0	0	13	0	0	0	0	0	0	9	4	13
ELEMENTARY OCCUPATIONS	2021-811204	Caretaker / cleaner	0	0	0	0	0	2	0	0	2	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	2
ELEMENTARY OCCUPATIONS	2021-821102-1	Waterman	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1
ELEMENTARY OCCUPATIONS	2021-831103-3	Plant Attendant	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1
ELEMENTARY OCCUPATIONS	2021-862202-5	General Worker	0	0	0	0	0	2	0	0	2	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	2
ELEMENTARY OCCUPATIONS Totals			0	2	0	0	0	17	0	0	19	0	0	0	0	0	1	12	6	19

E6. List of learning interventions by name - Employed

List of learning interventions by name - Employed												
LGSETA Strategic Focus Area	Municipal Key Performance Area	Skills Gap	Type of learning intervention	Qualification/Trade Title	SAQA/Trade ID	Learnership Code	Learnership Title	Name of learning intervention (Other)	Work Experience	NQF Level	Funded By	Number trained in this learning intervention

E7. NUMBER OF PLANNED TRAINING BENEFICIARIES BY OCCUPATION CATEGORY, GENDER, POPULATION GROUP, DISABILITY AND AGE for 30 April 2024 - Unemployed

NUMBER OF PLANNED TRAINING BENEFICIARIES BY OCCUPATION CATEGORY, GENDER, POPULATION GROUP, DISABILITY AND AGE - Unemployed																				
Occupation Category	Ofo Code	Occupation	FA	FC	FI	FW	MA	MC	MI	MW	Total	DA	DC	DI	DW	Total	< 35	35 - 55	55 >	Total	Non SA

E8. List of learning interventions by name - Unemployed

List of learning interventions by name - Unemployed														
LGSETA Strategic Focus Area	Municipal Key Performance Area	Occupation	Ofo Code	Skills Gap	Type of learning intervention	Qualification/Trade Title	SAQA/Trade ID	Learnership Code	Learnership Title	Name of learning intervention (Other)	NQF Level	Funded By	Number trained in this learning intervention - Females	Number trained in this learning intervention - Males

F1. Reporting on Training Expenditure for 1 May 2023 - 30 April 2024

Reporting on Training Expenditure						
Funding Source	Planned Training Budget - Employed	Planned Training Budget - Unemployed	Actual Expenditure - Employed	Actual Expenditure - Unemployed	Committed Expenditure - Employed	Committed Expenditure - Unemployed
Mandatory Grant Funds	50000	0	0	0	50000	0
Outstanding Mandatory Grant funds from previous year	0	0	0	0	0	0
Discretionary Grants funds	0	0	0	0	0	0
Additional funding (Municipality/entity, donor funds, other government funds etc)	100000	0	0	0	100000	0
Totals	150000	0	0	0	150000	0

F2. Total Actual Training Beneficiaries from 1 May 2023 - 30 April 2024

Total Actual Training Beneficiaries								
LGSETA Strategic Focus Area	Municipal Key Performance Area	Main IDP Priority Linked to Key Performance Area	Female - Employed	Male - Employed	Total	Female - Unemployed	Male - Unemployed	Total
Enhancing Good Governance, Leadership and Management Capabilities	Good Governance and the linking of democracy	To ensure good leadership skills	0	0	0	1	1	2
Promoting Sound Financial Management & Financial Viability	Municipal Financial Viability and Management	To enusre a clean financial audit	0	0	0	4	5	9
Enhancing Infrastructure and Service Delivery	Basic Service Delivery and Infrastructure Development	To ensure outstanding service delivery	0	0	0	0	15	15
Enhancing Municipal Planning	Municipal Transformation and Institutional Development		0	0	0			0
Promoting Spatial Transformation and Inclusion	Sustainable Local Economic Development	To deliver good economical development	0	0	0	0	1	1
Totals			0	0	0	5	22	27

F3. Total Actual Adult Education and Training beneficiaries as at 1 May 2023 - 30 April 2024

Total Actual Adult Education and Training beneficiaries										
AET Level	Female LGSETA funded - Employed	Female Other funded - Employed	Male LGSETA funded - Employed	Male Other funded - Employed	Total	Female LGSETA funded - Unemployed	Female Other funded - Unemployed	Male LGSETA funded - Unemployed	Male Other funded - Unemployed	Total
AET Level 1					0					0
AET Level 2					0					0
AET Level 3					0					0
AET Level 4					0					0
National Senior Certificate					0					0
Totals	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

F4 Total Actual Workplace Training systems beneficiaries as at 1 May 2023 - 30 April 2024

Total Actual Workplace Training systems beneficiaries					
Type	Female Beneficiaries	Male Beneficiaries	Total	Total number of training interventions	Total number of training interventions funded by LGSETA
Skills Development Facilitator			0		
Local Labour Forum			0		
Training Committee			0		
Totals	0	0	0	0	0

F5. NUMBER OF TRAINING BENEFICIARIES BY OCCUPATION CATEGORY, GENDER, POPULATION GROUP, DISABILITY AND AGE as at 1 May 2023 - 30 April 2024 - EMPLOYED

NUMBER OF TRAINING BENEFICIARIES BY OCCUPATION CATEGORY, GENDER, POPULATION GROUP, DISABILITY AND AGE - EMPLOYED																				
Occupation Category	Ofo Code	Occupation	FA	FC	FI	FW	MA	MC	MI	MW	Total	DA	DC	DI	DW	Total	< 35	35 - 55	55 >	Total
LEGISLATORS	2021-111101-9	Mayor	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1
LEGISLATORS	2021-111102-3	Chief Whip	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1
LEGISLATORS Totals			0	1	0	0	0	1	0	0	2	0	0	0	0	0	0	2	0	2
MANAGERS	2021-121101-8	Chief Financial Officer (CFO)	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1
MANAGERS Totals			0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1
PROFESSIONALS	2021-242402-4	Maintenance Instructor	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1
PROFESSIONALS Totals			0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1
SERVICE AND SALES WORKERS	2021-515301	Caretaker	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1
SERVICE AND SALES WORKERS	2021-541907	Disaster Management Officer	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1
SERVICE AND SALES WORKERS Totals			0	0	0	0	0	2	0	0	2	0	0	0	0	0	0	2	0	2
SKILLED AGRICULTURAL, FORESTRY, FISHERY, CRAFT AND RELATED TRADES WORKERS	2021-671101	Electrician	0	0	0	0	0	2	0	0	2	0	0	0	0	0	0	2	0	2
SKILLED AGRICULTURAL, FORESTRY, FISHERY, CRAFT AND RELATED TRADES WORKERS Totals			0	0	0	0	0	2	0	0	2	0	0	0	0	0	0	2	0	2
PLANT AND MACHINE OPERATORS AND ASSEMBLERS	2021-734214-3	Dump Truck Driver/ Operator	0	0	0	0	0	2	0	0	2	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	2
PLANT AND MACHINE OPERATORS AND ASSEMBLERS Totals			0	0	0	0	0	2	0	0	2	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	2
ELEMENTARY OCCUPATIONS	2021-811201-7	Cleaner (Non-domestic)	0	0	0	0	0	2	0	0	2	0	0	0	0	0	0	2	0	2
ELEMENTARY OCCUPATIONS	2021-862202-5	General Worker	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	1

ELEMENTARY OCCUPATIONS Totals	0	0	0	0	0	3	0	0	3	0	0	0	0	0	1	2	0	3
Totals	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

F6. List of learning interventions by name - Employed

List of learning interventions by name - Employed												
LGSETA Strategic Focus Area	Municipal Key Performance Area	Skills Gap	Type of learning intervention	Qualification/Trade Title	SAQA/Trade ID	Learnership Code	Learnership Title	Name of learning intervention (Other)	Work Experience	NQF Level	Funded By	Number trained in this learning intervention
Enhancing Good Governance, Leadership and Management Capabilities	Good Governance and the linking of democracy	Client Services	Internship	Further Education and Training Certificate: Generic Management: Disaster Risk Management	64870					NQF Level 4	Other Municipality funding	0
Enhancing Infrastructure and Service Delivery	Basic Service Delivery and Infrastructure Development	Fire Fighting - Elementary course	Skills Programme towards a Qualification	Further Education and Training Certificate: Fire and Rescue Operations	57803					NQF Level 4	Other Municipality funding	0
Enhancing Municipal Planning	Municipal Transformation and Institutional Development	Business Communication	Short Course: Non-credit					MFMP		Below NQF Level 1	LGSETA - Discretionary Grant funds	0
Totals												0

F7. NUMBER OF TRAINING BENEFICIARIES BY OCCUPATION CATEGORY, GENDER, POPULATION GROUP, DISABILITY AND AGE as at 1 May 2023 - 30 April 2024 - Unemployed

NUMBER OF TRAINING BENEFICIARIES BY OCCUPATION CATEGORY, GENDER, POPULATION GROUP, DISABILITY AND AGE - Unemployed																					
Occupation Category	Ofo Code	Occupation	FA	FC	FI	FW	MA	MC	MI	MW	Total	DA	DC	DI	DW	Total	< 35	35 - 55	55 >	Total	Non SA

F8. List of learning interventions by name - Unemployed

List of learning interventions by name - Unemployed									
Ofo Code	Occupation	Type of learning intervention	Learning intervention	Name of learning intervention (Other)	NQF Level	Funded By	Pivotal	Number trained in this learning intervention - Female	Number trained in this learning intervention - Male

Financial Year: 2022/2023
Annexure: Matters Affecting Audit Report
Audit Action Plan Status: All
Implementation Status: Not Yet Started|In Progress|Completed|Agreed Findings Addressed

Line Item	Finding	Amount	No. of Years Repeated	Responsible Person	Action Plan Status	Implementation Progress %	Implementation Status	Completed Date
Other	Employee cost : Employees not eligible for allowance	34 487		Pietra Fortuin, Mathilda Adams	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
Other	There are no controls in place to ensure that prior year restatements are performed using the correct figures as disclosed in the prior year of assessment			Monique Links, Rose Cloete	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
Long-term borrowings	Borrowings overstated			Ducan Jaars	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
Cash and cash equivalents	Cash and Cash Equivalents - Bank Balance in the AFS incorrect and no support for reconciling items	430 618		Rose Cloete, Monique Links	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
Trade and other payables from exchange transactions	Contracts not submitted	8 813 418	1	Ducan Jaars	Under Development	0%	Not Yet Started	
	Non-compliance matters on Human resource management			Mathilda Adams	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
Employee-related costs	Differences identified between GL, AFS and 12 month report for Employee related costs	4 607		Monique Links	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
Employee-related costs	Differences on recalculation of Basic salaries	410 786		Pietra Fortuin	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
	Compliance: Declaration of interest not signed within 60 days			Mathilda Adams	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
	Irregular Expenditure: PY qualification not addressed This results in the completeness of irregular expenditure of the prior year/opening balance not being confirmed.							
Other	Differences between irregular expenditure register and Invoice		1	Ducan Jaars	Under Development		Not Yet Started	
Other		3 858 589		Ducan Jaars	Under Development		Not Yet Started	
Other	Irregular expenditure not recorded in the correct period	1 853 266		Ducan Jaars	Under Development		Not Yet Started	
	AFS compliance			Soritha Cloete	Under Development	10%	In Progress	
	Prior years Unauthorised, Irregular and Fruitless & Wasteful Expenditure not investigated	195 730 819	10	Rose Cloete, Monique Links	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
	Non Compliance on 2022/23 Strategic planning & performance management			Soritha Cloete	Under Development		Not Yet Started	
Other	Prior year follow up: Supporting documents for the prior period error for land and building were not provided for audit purposes		1	Sarajo Gribble	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
Other	Property Plant and Equipment: PY issues Existence	11 790 515	1	Sarajo Gribble	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
Investment property	Investment Property: Assets with Zero Values - Immovable Assets		1	Sarajo Gribble	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
	Property, Plant, and Equipment: Immovable assets -Existence issue							
Other		5 197 292 185	1	Sarajo Gribble	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
Property, plant and equipment	Prior year finding - Completeness of Property, Plant and Equipment	65 206 021	1	Sarajo Gribble	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
Other	CY Infrastructure asset Water could not be verified - Co-ordinates not provided	90 082 721		Sarajo Gribble	Under Development	15%	In Progress	08-Mar-2024
Other	Work in Progress (Electric Poles & Evaporation ponds) incorrectly classified	2 883 796		Rose Cloete, Sarajo Gribble	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
Property, plant and equipment	- Property, Plant and Equipment - Land		1	Sarajo Gribble	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
Property, plant and equipment	Property, Plant and Equipment: Land and Buildings: Completeness	3 639 148	1	Sarajo Gribble	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
	Water inventory consumed not disclosed							
Other		537 047		Rose Cloete, Monique Links	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
Other	Occurrence of inventory consumed-Bidvest	1 218 206		Pietra Fortuin	Under Development	50%	In Progress	10-Mar-2024

	Investment Property - Existence issues (Properties could not be verified) :						
Investment property			Sarajo Gribble	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
Investment property	Investment Property - ISS.91: Investment Property - Classification & Assets that are disposed of but still have a CA Limitation of scope and disagreement - Lease Contracts not provided	3 760 895 812	Sarajo Gribble	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
Other	Finance - Existence of Other Assets of Property, Plant and Equipment	998 303 887	Ducan Jaars	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
Property, plant and equipment		1 213 419	Sarajo Gribble	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
Property, plant and equipment	Prior year finding - Condition Assessment and Useful life		Sarajo Gribble	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
Finance lease obligation	Prior year finding - Leased Asset Section 63 of GRAP 17 states that: The useful life of an asset is defined in terms of the asset's expected utility to the entity. GRAP 13 - Leases, in Appendix 1 - Classification of leases stipulates the following indicators for the classification of leases as finance Lease: 1. When Ownership transferred by end of lease term. 2. When Lease contains bargain purchase option. 3. When the Lease term is for the major part of asset's economic life. 4. When the Present value of minimum lease payments amount to substantially all the asset's fair value. 5. When the asset is of Specialized nature. 6. When the asset is not easily replaced.		1 Sarajo Gribble	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
	Payments not made within 30 days		10 Pietra Fortuin	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
Other	Expenditure - Evidence to confirm that goods were received was not obtained : Expenditure: Payments not made within 30 days		Pietra Fortuin Pietra Fortuin	Under Development Not Yet Started	50%	In Progress Not Yet Started	10-Mar-2024
Other	Expenditure not recorded in the correct accounting period Limitation of Scope- Inventory consumed		Pietra Fortuin	Under Development	60%	In Progress	10-Mar-2024
General expenses	Total payments made under the contract could not be determined as the contract amount was not included in the contract		Pietra Fortuin	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
Other	We could not confirm whether the procurement was economical as the contract amount was not included in the contract		Ducan Jaars, Pietra Fortuin	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
Other	Compliance: No step were taken to prevent UIFW		Ducan Jaars, Pietra Fortuin	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
Other	S & T pre-approval is not dated - Occurrence cannot be confirmed		Ducan Jaars, Pietra Fortuin, Monique Links	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
Bulk purchases	Bulk Purchases and Eskom Payable - Differences in Bulk purchases		Pietra Fortuin	Under Development	70%	In Progress	10-Mar-2024
Other	Limitation of Scope: Unallocated deposits Limitation of scope: Expenditure and Payables prior period corrections		Monique Links Riaan Links	Not Yet Started Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started Not Yet Started	
General expenses			Pietra Fortuin	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
Reported information not reliable	Reliability: Achievements not correctly report in the APR		Soritha Cloete	Not Yet Started	100%	In Progress	
Reported information not reliable	Completeness: AoPO		Soritha Cloete	Under Development	91%	In Progress	

	Accuracy not confirmed: 90% of the Trade Services maintenance budget spent by 30 June 2023				
Reported information not reliable		Soritha Cloete	Under Development	100%	In Progress	
	SCM : Limitation: The original request for quotations was not submitted AND Local Content	Ducan Jaars	Under Development	50%	In Progress	05-Mar-2024
Other	The expected supplier was not selected	Ducan Jaars, Monique Links	Under Development	1%	In Progress	06-Mar-2024
Other	Contract management	Rose Cloete, Ducan Jaars, Monique Links	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
Other	Overstatement of employee leave provision	Mathilda Adams	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
Debt impairment	Provision of Impairment- Inconsistently calculated Not in accordance with GRAP 104 and the Accounting policy	Rhowarshall Cloete, Rose Cloete	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
Other	Property Valuation Roll Incomplete	Rose Cloete, Regardt Saal, Awie Owies	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
Rev from non-exch transactions: Property rates	Valuation Roll Values different from AFS Note 18	Rose Cloete, Regardt Saal, Awie Owies	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
Rev from exch transactions: Service charges	Service charges: Different types of Limitations for Electricity	Rhowarshall Cloete, Regardt Saal, Awie Owies	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
Rev from exch transactions: Service charges	Service charges - Indigents - Customer qualifies but did not receive a full subsidy	Rhowarshall Cloete, Regardt Saal, Awie Owies	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
Rev from exch transactions: Service charges	Differences between the G.L and the Billing report	Rhowarshall Cloete, Rose Cloete	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
Other	Prepaid electricity receipts not provided for audit purposes	Rhowarshall Cloete, Awie Owies	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
Rev from exch transactions: Service charges	Customers not traced to the billing report	Rhowarshall Cloete, Riaan Links	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
Rev from non-exch transactions: Property rates	Property rates: Property rates levied on properties owned by the municipality	Rhowarshall Cloete, Regardt Saal	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
	Revenue cut off issues - Water and Electricity					
Rev from exch transactions: Service charges		Riaan Links, Rhowarshall Cloete	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
Other		Riaan Links	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
Rev from non-exch transactions: Government grants & subsidies	Revenue for conditional grants recognized in the incorrect period	Rose Cloete, Awie Owies	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
Finance lease obligation	Property, Plant and Equipment: Differences identified between the Asset register and AFS	Sarajo Gribble	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
Other	Expenditure: Limitation of scope - Contracts not submitted for audit	Ducan Jaars, Pietra Fortuin, Monique Links	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
Impairment and derecognition loss	Property plant and equipment - Impairment on fixed assets.	Rose Cloete, Sarajo Gribble	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
Cash and cash equivalents	Cash and Cash Equivalents - Prior Period Error - No sufficient appropriate evidence to support the restatement	Rose Cloete, Monique Links, Riaan Links	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
As per audit finding	Statement of Cash flows differences	Monique Links, Rose Cloete	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
As per audit finding	Unresolved issues identified during the prior year audit process	Rhowarshall Cloete, Rose Cloete, Pietra Fortuin	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
	No recruitment processes implemented for Wage workers	Mathilda Adams	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
Other	Employee files not submitted and differences identified	Pietra Fortuin, Mathilda Adams	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
Other	Employee cost journals not dated and approved by the delegated official	Pietra Fortuin	Under Development	51%	In Progress	10-Mar-2024
	IT control deficiencies					
Other		Frederick Strauss, Tyron Links	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
	Understanding the audit committee: Internal control deficiencies identified	Elzetta Mouton	Under Development		Not Yet Started	
As per audit finding	Differences identified between the GL, TB and AFS for line items in the Statement of Financial Position	Rose Cloete, Monique Links	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
	Deficiencies identified with the policies of the municipality	Frederick Strauss, Rose Cloete	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
As per audit finding	Prior year unresolved issues: Disclosures	Rose Cloete, Monique Links	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
Rev from exch transactions: Other income	Prior year follow up: Consumer deposits	Rhowarshall Cloete	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
As per audit finding	Prior period error disclosure note not meeting GRAP 3 requirements	Rose Cloete, Monique Links	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
Property, plant and equipment	Prior year follow up: Incorrect classification Property plant and equipment: Community assets, Roads and Land and Building	Sarajo Gribble	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
Property, plant and equipment	Property, Plant and Equipment: Disposed assets with CA	Sarajo Gribble	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	

	Asset Register - Compliance with National Treasury Guidelines		Sarajo Gribble	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
Property, plant and equipment	Prior Year FIN - PPE Infrastructure Community Assets - Classification		Sarajo Gribble	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
Property, plant and equipment	Asset Register: Conditional Assessment of the Assets of the Municipality		Sarajo Gribble	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
Other	Property, Plant and Equipment: Infrastructure Assets (Solid waste) -Existence issue		Sarajo Gribble	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
Property, plant and equipment	Work In Progress (Project 49) incorrectly valued		Sarajo Gribble	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
Investment property	Land with negative/zero values - Prior year error		Sarajo Gribble	Under Development		Not Yet Started	13-Mar-2024
Property, plant and equipment	PPE Prior correction - note 36 year issue note		Sarajo Gribble	Under Development		Not Yet Started	
Property, plant and equipment	PPE Prior correction - note 36 year issue note		Sarajo Gribble	Under Development		Not Yet Started	
Inventories	Understatement of inventory		Monique Links	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
Other	Journal and support not provided(Limitation of Scope)		Pietra Fortuin	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
Inventories	Understatement of Inventory consumed		Pietra Fortuin, Monique Links	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
Investment property	Prior year finding not resolved- Investment Property with Zero values	1	Sarajo Gribble	Under Development		Not Yet Started	
Investment property	Investment Property - Assets disposed still registered in the name of the municipality	1	Sarajo Gribble	Under Development	16%	In Progress	
Finance lease obligation	Leased Assets - Incorrectly valued		Sarajo Gribble	Under Development		Not Yet Started	
General expenses	Travel and subsistence: Accuracy could not be		Pietra Fortuin	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
Other	Travel and Subsistence: Daily allowance rates and rate per kilometres travelled not in accordance with the policy		Pietra Fortuin	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
Other	No invoice was attached to the payment batch		Pietra Fortuin	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
Other	Overtime claimed was not pre-approved		Pietra Fortuin, Mathilda Adams	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
	IDP and Budget statements: Municipality did not give notice to the public		Rose Cloete, Tyron Links	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
	Internal control deficiencies and compliance matters on the internal audit function		Frederick Strauss, Rose Cloete, Elzetta Mouton	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
Other	Oversight Committees details not received		Soritha Cloete	Under Development	100%	In Progress	
Unauthorised expenditure	Unauthorised expenditure incompletely disclosed		Ducan Jaars, Monique Links	Under Development		Not Yet Started	
Other	Limitation: Information not received for business process [Capital assets]		Rose Cloete, Sarajo Gribble	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
Other	Inventory journals not dated(Internal control deficiency)		Pietra Fortuin, Monique Links	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
As per audit finding	Differences Between General Ledger and Annual Financial Statements - Expenditure and Revenue		Rose Cloete	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
Other	Expenditure: No financial delegation in place		Rose Cloete	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
Other	Evergreen contract identified		Ducan Jaars, Monique Links	Under Development		Not Yet Started	
Other	Journals not authorised by the delegated official		Rose Cloete, Pietra Fortuin, Monique Links	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
Other	Internal control deficiency in expenditure		Ducan Jaars, Monique Links	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
Other	Limitation of scope - Contracts not supplied and contract register not regularly updated		Ducan Jaars	Under Development		Not Yet Started	
Other	Service charges (Indigent) issues identified through CAATs assessment.		Rhowarshall Cloete, Awie Owies	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
Other	Note ref. number on the face of the AFS does not agree to the note ref no. on the note		Rose Cloete, Monique Links	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	
	VAT: Late submission		Monique Links, Rose Cloete	Not Yet Started		Not Yet Started	